

MISSION TRAINING PLAN  
FOR THE  
ENGINEER COMPANY  
LIGHT ARMORED CAVALRY REGIMENT

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.



# MISSION TRAINING PLAN

## Engineer Company, Light Armored Cavalry Regiment

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
<b>Table of Contents</b> .....	i
<b>PREFACE</b> .....	ii
<b>Chapter 1. Unit Training</b> .....	1-1
<b>Chapter 2. Training Matrixes</b> .....	2-1
2-1. General.....	2-1
2-2. Mission-to-Collective Tasks Matrix.....	2-1
<b>Chapter 3. Mission Outlines / Training Plans</b> .....	3-1
<b>Chapter 4. Training Exercise</b> .....	4-1
<b>Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines (T&amp;EOs)</b> .....	5-1
<b>Chapter 6. External Evaluation</b> .....	6-1
<b>APPENDIX A - COMBINED-ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY (CATS)</b> .....	A-1
<b>APPENDIX B - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)</b> .....	B-1
<b>APPENDIX C - THREAT ANALYSIS</b> .....	C-1
<b>APPENDIX D - METRIC CONVERSION CHART</b> .....	D-1
<b>Glossary</b> .....	Glossary-1
<b>References</b> .....	References-1
<b>Questionnaire</b> .....	Questionnaire-1

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

\*This publication supersedes ARTEP 5-145-31-MTP, 17 February 1989, for other than Corps Wheeled.

## PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides the active component (AC) and the reserve component (RC) training manager with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are the principal ones that the Engineer (EN) Company (CO), Light (LT) Armored Cavalry Regiment (ACR), are expected to execute with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in this MTP. Standards for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered. This document is in alignment with and part of the United States (US) Army's training and tactical doctrine.

This MTP applies to the EN CO, LT ACR table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) 05053L000.

The proponent of this publication is Headquarters (HQ), US Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC). Submit comments for improving this publication on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 and forward it to Commandant, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Fort Leonard Wood, Missouri 65473-8600.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

**CHAPTER 1**

**Unit Training**

1-1. General. This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit's training program will depend on the--

- Unit's mission-essential tasks list (METL).
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- Unit's training priorities.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher echelon's training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit's training program consists of the following publications:

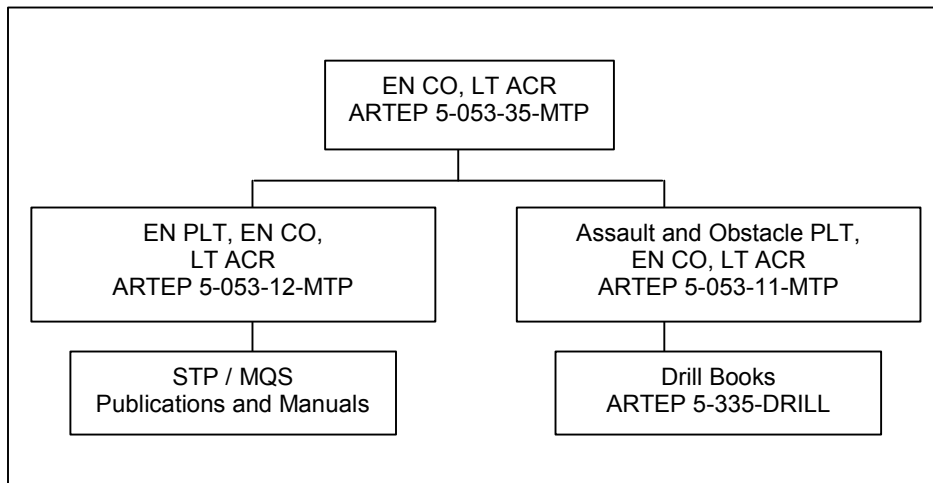
a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-053-12-MTP for the EN PLT, EN CO, LT ACR. This ARTEP MTP describes the relationship of the PLT's training program to the CO's training program.

b. ARTEP 5-035-11-MTP, Assault and Obstacle PLT, EN CO, LT ACR. This ARTEP MTP indicates the relationship of the PLT's training program to the CO's training program.

c. ARTEP 5-335-DRILL. The unit must sustain drills. They are US Army standard and may not be modified.

d. Soldier training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialty (MOS) and skill levels.

e. Military qualification standards (MQS) II manuals for company-grade officers.



**Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship**

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendices.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the missions and the collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of a situational-training exercise (STX). This exercise provides training information and a preconstructed scenario. Also, it can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. This exercise may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines (T&EOs), provides the training and evaluation criteria for all the tasks the unit must master to effectively perform its mission. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) counter tasks. Each T&EO is part of a mission, and in various combinations, composes the training exercise in Chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Combined-Arms Training Strategies (CATS), contains an explanation of the link between CATS and the Standard Army Training System (SATS) and how CATS can assist training managers with training in a combined-arms environment.

h. Appendix B, Exercise Operation Order (OPORD), contains a sample OPORD.

i. Appendix C, Threat Analysis, describes the local, regional, and global threats as well as special situations that impact operations.

j. Appendix D, Metric Conversion Chart, shows how to convert US and metric measurements.

#### 1-4. Missions and Tasks.

a. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the TOE and an implied mission that the unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical missions are the focus for the unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own mission. The following is a listing of the missions for the unit:

(1) Mobility.

(2) Countermobility.

(3) Survivability.

(4) Fight as an engineer.

b. Each of these tasks may be trained individually or jointly with other tasks. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop a field-training exercise (FTX) for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the unit's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

c. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

d. Leader tasks that support the unit's missions are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of the unit's missions.

e. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to standards outlined in the appropriate STPs. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 show the individual tasks that support collective-task training.

1-5. Principles of Training. This MTP is based on the training principles explained in Field Manual (FM) 25-100.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program developed and executed by a unit to train to standards in its critical wartime missions will be a component of the Army's CATS. The purpose of the CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. The CATS will provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to the CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training events and resources required to facilitate training to standard. The CATS will be embedded in the SATS version 4.1 and higher.

a. The unit training strategies central to the CATS provide the commander with a descriptive "menu" for training, reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The unit's training strategy is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the BN to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP those tasks required to train his METL. The training strategies to be provided in the SATS 4.1 will provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. The unit's training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in this MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit's training strategy are:

(1) Maneuver- and collective-training strategy. The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FM publications.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit's training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or unit(s), to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit's METL and the commander's

assessment of his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective-training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

e. When developing the unit's training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL. The CATS is discussed in Appendix A of this MTP.

1-7. Conducting Training. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 25-100 and 25-101. The commander--

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for training based on his METL and the next higher HQ guidance. Trainers must plan and execute training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STX and FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, command guidance. If they do not support the guidance, or if they need to be modified, refer to the matrixes in Chapter 2. These matrixes provide a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There is never time to train everything. You must orient on the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule, using the following procedures:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how you can use multiechelon training for the best results.

(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained and schedules them on the unit's training schedule.

f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. Keeps subordinate leaders informed and oversees their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. Force Protection.

a. Safety. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and risk management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the commander's review of operational safety and leads to decision-making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win fast and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are--

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.



(3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.

(4) Standards and procedures for task preferences that are clear and practical.

(5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. Risk management. Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It assists commanders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but also helps identify who will have the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment.

c. Chain of command. Safety demands total chain-of-command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. The chain-of-command responsibilities include--

(1) Commanders.

(a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.

(b) Specify the risk you will accept to accomplish the mission.

(c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.

(d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.

(e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk-management concepts.

(2) Staff.

(a) Assist the commander in assessing risks and developing risk-reduction options for training.

(b) Integrate risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.

(c) Eliminate unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.

(d) Assess safety performance during training.

(e) Evaluate safety performance during after-action reviews (AARs).

(3) Subordinate leaders.

(a) Apply consistently effective risk-management concepts and methods to the operations they lead.

(b) Report risk issues beyond your control or authority to your superiors.

(4) Individual soldiers.

(a) Report unsafe conditions and acts; correct the situation when possible.

(b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.

(c) Take responsibility for personal safety.

(d) Work as a team member.

(e) Modify your own risk behavior.

d. Steps. Risk management is a five-step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5:

(1) Identify hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.

(2) Assess hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army standard risk-assessment matrix (Figure 1-2) is a tool to be used for assessing hazards.

(3) Make risk decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operations. Accept no unnecessary risks, and make any remaining risk decisions at the proper level of command.

(4) Implement controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANs), OPORDs, standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

(5) Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards, to include follow-up and AAR. Develop lessons learned.



(3) Combat-identification failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.

(4) Inadequate control measures. These occur when units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures that are necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(5) Reporting communication failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(6) Weapons errors. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(7) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINES), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

g. Results. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit's ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

- (1) Loss of confidence in unit leadership.
- (2) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.
- (3) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.
- (4) Oversupervision of units.
- (5) Hesitation to conduct night operations.
- (6) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.
- (7) Loss of initiative.
- (8) Disrupted operations.
- (9) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a. Identify hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

b. Assess the hazard. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk-assessment matrix (Figure 1-3). Consider the severity of environmental degradation when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment

resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk-assessment matrix.

c. Make environmental risk decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

d. Brief the chain of command. Brief the chain of command (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

e. Implement controls. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training-performance standards, and rehearsals.

f. Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental-protection standards.

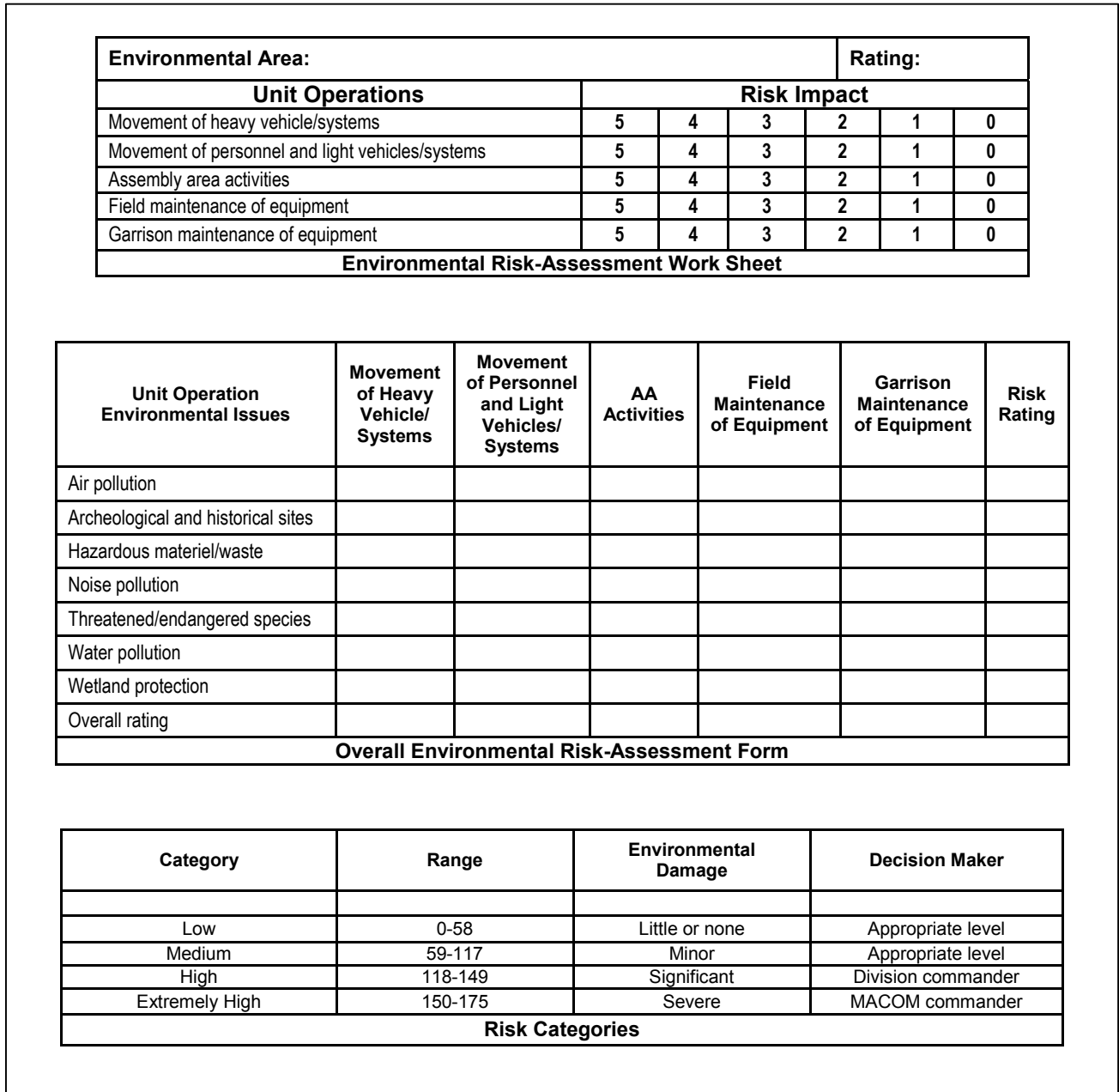
1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a HQ two levels above the evaluated unit. See Chapter 6 for more information on external evaluations.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that will allow you to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. Also, it gets everyone involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.



**Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk-Assessment Matrix**

1-11. **Feedback.** Recommendations for improvement of this ARTEP MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Please send DA Form 2028 comments to the address reflected in paragraph 3 of the preface, or use the questionnaire provided at the end of this MTP.

## CHAPTER 2

### Training Matrixes

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel. The mission identification table listed below (Figure 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

<b>Mission Identification Table</b>
<b>Mission Title</b>
Counter mobility
Fight as Engineers
Fight as Infantry
Mobility
Provide Engineer Support to Stability Operations
Sustainment Engineering
Unit Survivability

**Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table**

2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the mission and its supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate battlefield operating systems (BOS), which are indicated by an "X" in the matrix. The BOS used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pamphlet (Pam) 11-9. A specific mission is trained by using collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

Collective Tasks	COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>				
05-1-1389 Identify Topographic-Support Requirements	X	X		X
05-2-0403 Conduct a Water-Crossing Site Reconnaissance	X	X		X
05-2-0408 Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	X	X		X
05-2-0413 Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection	X	X		X
05-2-1390 Execute Target Folder Battle Drills	X	X		X
05-3-0402.05-R01A Conduct a Route Classification	X	X	X	X
19-3-3105.05-T01A Process Captured Documents and Equipment	X	X	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>				
05-1-1200 Fight as Engineers	X	X	X	X
05-2-0006 Perform Combat Trail Construction and Clearing	X	X		X
05-2-0025 Report Obstacle Information (Company)	X	X	X	X
05-3-7122 React to Contact	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks	COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
07-1-1923.05-T01A React to Indirect Fire	X	X	X	X
07-2-0333.05-T01A Perform Passage of Lines	X	X	X	X
07-2-1136.05-T02A Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X	X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A Conduct a Convoy	X	X	X	X
07-3-0219.05-T01A Establish Unit Defense	X	X	X	X
07-3-1123.05-T01A Conduct a Tactical Road March	X	X	X	X
07-3-4129.05-T01A Defend a Battle Position	X	X	X	X
07-3-C211.05-T01A Move Tactically	X	X	X	X
12-1-0409.05-T01A Prepare Personnel for Deployment	X	X	X	X
<b>Employ Firepower</b>				
05-1-0200 Coordinate the Integration of Air Defense for Mobility and Countermobility Operations	X	X		X
05-2-0100 Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)	X	X	X	X
<b>Protect the Force</b>				
03-2-3008.05-T01A Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X	X	X	X
03-2-C312.05-T01A Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation	X	X	X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions	X	X	X	X
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	X	X	X	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X	X	X	X
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations	X	X	X	X
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X



Collective Tasks	COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	X	X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X	X	X	X
05-2-0001 Prepare an Obstacle Plan	X	X	X	X
05-2-0111 Conduct Minefield-Clearing Operations	X	X	X	X
05-2-0114 Conduct Breaching Operations	X	X		X
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X	X	X	X
05-2-0508 Plan for Survivability Operations	X	X		X
05-2-0510 Direct Survivability Construction	X	X		X
05-2-0600 Support a River-Crossing Operation	X	X	X	X
05-2-0603 Prepare Expedient Fords	X	X	X	X
05-2-0911 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X	X	X	X
05-3-0113 Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely Delivered Mines	X	X	X	X
05-3-0115.05-R01A Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield	X	X	X	X
05-3-0210 Disable Critical Equipment and Material	X	X	X	X
07-2-0414.05-T01A Establish a Company Defensive Position	X	X	X	X
09-2-0337.05-T01A React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	X	X	X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A Use Passive Air-Defense Measures	X	X	X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	X	X	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A Perform Risk-Management Procedures	X	X	X	X
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>				
05-2-0042 Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies	X	X	X	X
05-2-0051 Coordinate for Food Service Support	X	X	X	X
05-2-1007 Conduct Administrative Operations	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks		COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
05-2-1024	Conduct Combat Refueling Operations	X	X	X	X
05-2-1068	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points	X	X	X	X
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)	X	X	X	X
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures	X	X	X	X
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field Sanitation Functions	X	X	X	X
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations	X	X	X	X
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply	X	X	X	X
10-2-0320.05-T01A	Provide Company Supply Support	X	X	X	X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System	X	X	X	X
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	X	X	X	X
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>					
05-1-0026	Report Engineer Information	X	X	X	X
05-2-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)	X	X	X	X
05-2-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex	X	X	X	X
05-2-0064	Establish a Command Post (CP)	X	X	X	X
05-2-0300	Integrate Engineer Elements into the Maneuver Staff	X	X	X	X
05-2-0314	Integrate Obstacles into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans	X	X		X
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures	X	X	X	X
05-3-1018.05-R01A	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	X	X	X	X
11-3-0214.05-T01A	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X	X	X	X

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>COUNTERMOBILITY</b>	<b>FIGHT AS ENGINEERS</b>	<b>FIGHT AS INFANTRY</b>	<b>MOBILITY</b>
12-1-0408.05-T01A Participate in the Operations Order (OPORD) Process	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
12-2-0321.05-T01A Maintain Company Strength	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
12-2-0338.05-T01A Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>

Collective Tasks		STABILITY	SUSTAINMENT ENGINEERING	UNIT SURVIVABILITY
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>				
05-1-1389	Identify Topographic-Support Requirements	X	X	X
05-2-0403	Conduct a Water-Crossing Site Reconnaissance	X	X	X
05-2-0408	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	X	X	
05-2-0413	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection	X	X	
05-2-1390	Execute Target Folder Battle Drills			
05-3-0402.05-R01A	Conduct a Route Classification	X	X	
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment	X	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>				
05-1-1200	Fight as Engineers	X		X
05-2-0006	Perform Combat Trail Construction and Clearing	X		
05-2-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Company)	X	X	X
05-3-7122	React to Contact	X	X	X
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire	X	X	X
07-2-0333.05-T01A	Perform Passage of Lines	X	X	X
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy	X	X	X
07-3-0219.05-T01A	Establish Unit Defense	X	X	X
07-3-1123.05-T01A	Conduct a Tactical Road March	X	X	X
07-3-4129.05-T01A	Defend a Battle Position	X	X	X
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically	X	X	X
12-1-0409.05-T01A	Prepare Personnel for Deployment	X	X	X
<b>Employ Firepower</b>				
05-1-0200	Coordinate the Integration of Air Defense for Mobility and Countermobility Operations			X

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>STABILITY</b>	<b>SUSTAINMENT ENGINEERING</b>	<b>UNIT SURVIVABILITY</b>
05-2-0100 Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)			<b>X</b>
<b>Protect the Force</b>			
03-2-3008.05-T01A Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
03-2-C312.05-T01A Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
03-3-C201.05-T01A Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0001 Prepare an Obstacle Plan	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0111 Conduct Minefield-Clearing Operations	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0114 Conduct Breaching Operations			<b>X</b>
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0508 Plan for Survivability Operations	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0510 Direct Survivability Construction	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0600 Support a River-Crossing Operation	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0603 Prepare Expedient Fords	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>

Collective Tasks		STABILITY	SUSTAINMENT ENGINEERING	UNIT SURVIVABILITY
05-2-0911	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X	X	X
05-3-0113	Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely Delivered Mines	X	X	X
05-3-0115.05-R01A	Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield	X	X	X
05-3-0210	Disable Critical Equipment and Material	X	X	X
07-2-0414.05-T01A	Establish a Company Defensive Position	X	X	X
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	X	X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air- Defense Measures	X	X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined-Arms Air- Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	X	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk- Management Procedures	X	X	X
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>				
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies	X	X	X
05-2-0051	Coordinate for Food Service Support	X	X	X
05-2-1007	Conduct Administrative Operations	X	X	X
05-2-1024	Conduct Combat Refueling Operations		X	X
05-2-1068	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points	X	X	X
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)	X	X	X
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures	X	X	X
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field Sanitation Functions	X	X	X
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations	X	X	X
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply	X	X	X
10-2-0320.05-T01A	Provide Company Supply Support	X	X	X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System	X	X	X

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>STABILITY</b>	<b>SUSTAINMENT ENGINEERING</b>	<b>UNIT SURVIVABILITY</b>
19-3-3106.05-T01A Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>			
05-1-0026 Report Engineer Information	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0002 Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0003 Prepare an Engineer Annex	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0064 Establish a Command Post (CP)	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0300 Integrate Engineer Elements into the Maneuver Staff	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0314 Integrate Obstacles into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans			<b>X</b>
05-2-1218 Conduct Report Procedures	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-3-1018.05-R01A Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
11-5-1102.05-T01A Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
12-1-0408.05-T01A Participate in the Operations Order (OPORD) Process	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
12-2-0321.05-T01A Maintain Company Strength	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
12-2-0338.05-T01A Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>

**Figure 2-2. Collective Task to Missions**





## CHAPTER 3

### Mission Outlines / Training Plans

3-1. General. The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their support tasks. Each outline provides the trainer with a diagram of the unit's mission, sample FTXs and STXs, and the collective tasks that comprise them.

3-2. Mission Outlines. Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the unit's ability to perform its missions. The mission outlines, Tables 3-1 through 3-5, provide the commander with a visual outline of his unit's missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

**Table 3-1. Countermobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON COUNTERMOBILITY</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-3-1018.05-R01A	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-0306	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-0307	Construct a Log Obstacle
05-3-0303.05-R01A	Construct Wire Obstacles
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures

**Table 3-2. Fight as Engineers Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON FIGHT AS ENGINEERS</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack
03-3-C209.05-T01A	React to Smoke Operations
05-1-1200	Fight as Engineers
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
07-2-0414.05-T01A	Establish a Company Defensive Position

**Table 3-3. Mobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON MOBILITY</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically-Contaminated Area
05-3-0114	Support Breaching Operations
05-3-0404	Conduct River-Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-0609	Operate River-Crossing Sites
05-3-0603	Prepare Expedient Fords
05-3-0767	Clear Obstacles with Engineer Equipment

**Table 3-4. Perform Survivability Construction Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON PERFORM SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare For a Chemical Attack
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare For a Friendly Nuclear Strike
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare For a Nuclear Attack
05-3-0306	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-0304	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions
05-3-0305	Construct Vehicle Protective Positions
05-3-0312	Construct Bunkers and Shelters

**Table 3-5. Fight as Infantry Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON FIGHT AS INFANTRY</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare For a Chemical Attack
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare For a Friendly Nuclear Strike
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare For a Nuclear Attack
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
07-2-0333.05-T01A	Perform Passage of Lines
07-2-0414.05-T01A	Establish a Company Defensive Position
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry

## CHAPTER 4

### Training Exercise

4-1. General. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains a sample STX. It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit's mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the STX by exercise number, title, and page number.

**Table 4-1. STX Exercise**

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
STX 5-2-E0001	Breaching Obstacles	4-1

4-2. STX. STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented, tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. The STX provides the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. The STX--

- a. Provides repetitive training of missions.
- b. Allows the training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- c. Allows the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.
- d. Saves time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

### ENGINEER PLATOON STX 5-2-E0001 BREACHING OBSTACLES

1. Objective. This sample STX trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the platoon's operation (breaching obstacles).
2. Interface. This STX supports the company FTX 5-2-E0001 requirement to conduct combat operations.
3. Training.
  - a. Individual training. This training should be based on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. Use the individual-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 as a source for these individual tasks. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 12B and the soldier's common tasks manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards then providing feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes common task tests and the commander's evaluations.
  - b. Collective training. This training should be based on the collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided. Collective tasks that could support this STX and mission (as well as other missions) are in the mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2.
  - c. Leader training. This training should be based on the leader tasks required for the exercises as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or by one or all of the following methods. When material and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to the methods listed below.

(1) Classroom discussions on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit standing operating procedures (SOPs).

(2) A map reconnaissance assists in terrain analysis and war gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(3) Terrain board or sand table exercises permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war gaming or rehearsals. (Model the terrain board or the sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(4) Tactical exercises without troops (TEWTs) allow leaders to train on the ground, practicing land-navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions.

(5) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer (NCO) development program.

(6) Training extension courses use audiovisual equipment to present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard.

d. Training tips and instructions. The following are training tips and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX:

(1) Know the requirements for breaching obstacles, marking obstacles, and tactical movement.

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EO that supports this exercise.

(4) Conduct this STX using one of the following options:

(a) With ammunition, without ammunition, or using live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) With or without the Multiple Integrated Laser-Equipment System (MILES). The MILES provides better feedback and should be used if it is available.

(c) Under all environmental conditions, both day and night and with or without nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC). These scenarios should involve an active NBC environment.

(5) Ensure that this STX is initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (expect for planned AARs). During the "run" phase, the STX is executed under conditions as close as possible to those expected in combat (including full operational security [OPSEC] and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, an aggressive opposing forces [OPFOR], NBC environment, and movement distance). This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training and drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(6) Ensure that the T&EO standards for this exercise (from Chapter 5) are met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(7) Conduct this exercise on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(8) Ensure that the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to portray threat activities realistically.

(9) Assign at least one evaluator to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR are in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary.

(10) Ensure that OPFOR units look and fight like a potential enemy. This will help soldiers understand threat tactics, doctrine, and weapons systems.

e. Training enhancers. This STX requires the platoon to breach an obstacle, move tactically, support by fire, and mark an obstacle.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in this STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without night-vision devices (NVDs).

(2) This STX can be conducted under increasing mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) levels as proficiency increase.

#### 4. General Situation.

a. Contact with the enemy obstacle has been established. Initial reports indicate that the obstacle is overwatched by a company-sized element. His defensive positions are not well established. He has the capability for indirect fire and close air support (CAS). The enemy has used chemical weapons and will probably do so again. A breach of the obstacle has been ordered to allow maneuver forces to move through to attack the enemy. Figure 4-1 illustrates the graphic scenario of task performance in this exercise.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a company fragmentary order (FRAGO) by the platoon and ends after the obstacle is marked. An after-action review (AAR) should be held after the obstacle has been breached and marked. A final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your platoon's performance. Table 4-2 provides a recommended sequence of T&EOs and a recommended time for each portion of the STX.

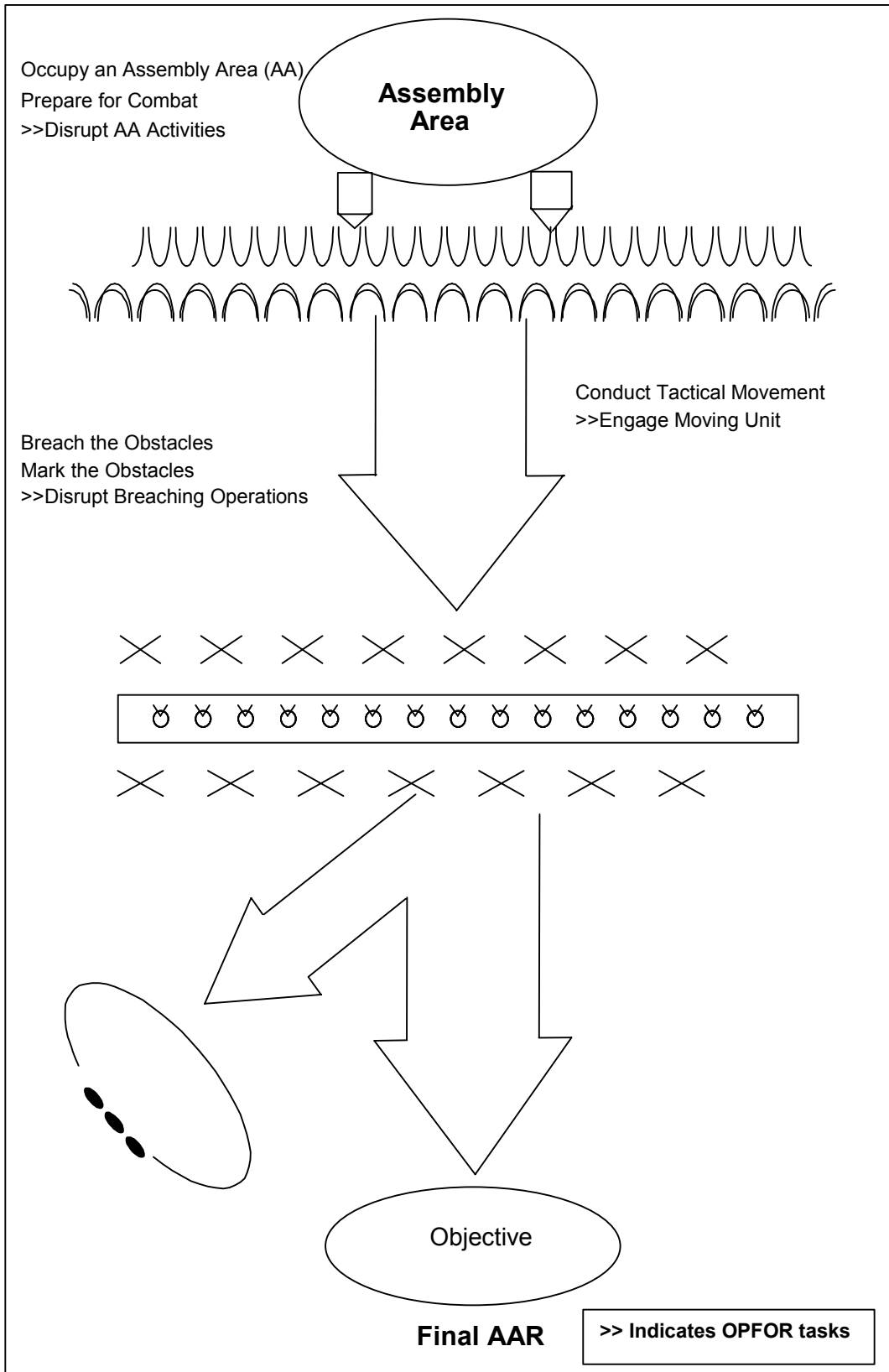


Figure 4-1. General Scenario STX

**Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario**

<b>Event</b>	<b>Action</b>	<b>Estimated Time</b>
<u>Module 1</u>		
1	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	4 hours
2	Receive a FRAGO	15 minutes
3	Prepare for Combat	3 hours
4	Issue a FRAGO	2 hours
5	Conduct Tactical Movement	2 hours
6	Breach the Obstacle	15 minutes
7	Mark the Obstacle	15 minutes
8	Conduct a Final AAR	1 hour
<b>Total time:</b>		<b>12.45 hours</b>
<b>NOTES:</b>		
1. These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.		
2. Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors and the unit's training proficiency.		
3. Additional time may be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.		

5. Special Situation.

a. Your platoon is part of a company in a secure AA. The platoon receives a FRAGO to breach obstacles (Figure 4-2).

b. The company commander has ordered your platoon to lift your supporting fires. A sister platoon is prepared to provide support for the breach and marking of the obstacle. The company commander orders your platoon to breach the obstacle.

6. Support Requirements.

a. Trainers and observers/controllers (Os/Cs). This exercise can be conducted by the company commander or the platoon leader who will be the trainer and primary evaluator. At least one other O/C is required with the OPFOR. Another platoon being trained or evaluated should be used as the platoon supporting the breach operations. This platoon will need an additional trainer or O/C.

b. Vehicles and communications. Those vehicles and communications organic to the platoon are needed for this exercise. Two or three vehicles or trailers should be in the OPFOR supply site.

c. OPFOR. The OPFOR ground force should at least be a reinforced squad.

<b>FRAGMENTARY ORDER</b>	
<p>1. SITUATION.</p> <p>a. Enemy Forces. The enemy forces are at 60 to 70 percent strength. They are preparing to counterattack and are expected to use air-delivered or artillery-delivered nonpersistent nerve agent.</p> <p>b. Friendly Force. (Element designation) attack (date/time group) to destroy the enemy force at Objective _____ to disrupt the enemy's counterattack.</p>	
<p>2. MISSION. (Element destination) is to provide breach support for (supported elements designation) to breach obstacles along the main avenue of approach.</p>	
<p>3. EXECUTION.</p> <p>a. Concept of the Operations. (See overlay.)</p> <p>(1) Intent. Breach obstacles and destroy the enemy preparing to counterattack.</p> <p>(2) Fire Support. Priority of fire to (another) platoon.</p> <p>b. (Another) Platoon.</p> <p>(1) Provide breach support for (evaluated) platoon.</p> <p>(2) Prepare to replace (evaluated) platoon in case they become combat ineffective.</p> <p>c. (Evaluated) Platoon.</p> <p>(1) Provide local support by fire (initially).</p> <p>(2) Breach obstacles.</p> <p>(3) Mark obstacles according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).</p> <p>d. Coordinating Instructions.</p> <p>(1) Company rally point (RP) is (grid).</p> <p>(2) Company linkup point is (grid).</p>	

**Figure 4-2. Sample FRAGO for STX 5-2-E0001**

d. Maneuver area. A 15- by 4-kilometer training area is desired. This area should provide for infiltration, cross-country movement, locations for supply sites, and a complex obstacle. The terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to a "geographical" or "school" solution does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select and conceal positions.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-3.



**Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 5-2-E0001**

<b>Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 5-2-E0001</b>			
<b>Ammunition</b>	<b>DODIC</b>	<b>Estimated Basic Load</b>	
5.56 millimeters (mm)	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per squad automatic weapon (SAW)	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
Antitank Weapon-Effect Simulator System (ATWEES) (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulator, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolitions) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (see note)</b>			
Mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC)		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block trinitrotoluene (TNT)		50 per squad	
Modernized demolition initiator (MDI) M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 each platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>CLASS IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Mines			
<b>MILES Equipment</b>			
	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
Armored personnel carrier (APC)	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small-arms alignment fixture		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the STX.</b>			

f. Regulations and requirements. Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

7. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-4 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that are used to evaluate the STX.

**Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating STX 5-2-E0001**

Task	Number
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	05-3-1018.05-R01A
Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	03-2-3008.05-T01A
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	03-3-C208.05-T01A
Support Breaching Operations	05-3-0114
Reorganize as Infantry	05-2-1200
Fight as Infantry	05-2-1215

8. Operation Order (OPORD). Figure 4-3 shows a sample OPORD using the outline provided in Chapter 4.

<p>1. <b>SITUATION.</b></p> <p>a. <b>Enemy Forces.</b> Contact with the enemy has been broken. He has withdrawn deep to the rear. He is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM) indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.</p> <p>b. <b>Friendly Forces.</b> 5th Division attacks to secure Objective Richmond, then assists the passage of the exploitation force (24th Division). This operation will rapidly penetrate the main defensive belt to draw the 10th Independent Tank Regiment (ITR) south and fix it in a zone. This operation includes--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.</li> <li>(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.</li> <li>(3) Supporting fires. 4th Battalion is in direct support.</li> </ul> <p>2. <b>MISSION.</b> 25th Brigade conducts a passage of lines and attacks to secure Objective Richmond. On order, the 25th Brigade continues movement forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.</p> <p>3. <b>EXECUTION.</b></p> <p>a. <b>Concept of the Operation.</b> See the overlay developed by the trainer.</p> <p>(1) <b>Maneuver.</b> 25th Brigade departs AA NK 243567 and conducts a passage of lines through the elements of 3rd Division. It conducts a penetration with two task forces (TFs), with one TF following as the brigade's reserve. TF A will be the main effort and attack along Axis Oak. TF B attacks along Axis Pine and is the supporting attack. On order, TF C (trailing along Axis Oak) becomes the main effort and continues the attack to Objective Richmond. The intent is to gain contact with the enemy, locate, and fix his main body so that the division can conduct envelopments to destroy him. It is necessary to destroy his combat outposts. We must quickly reorganize and continue movement until we find the main body. The TF that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If they cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver by the remainder of the brigade. Movement will continue to PL Green if no contact is gained, and past PL Green, on order.</p>
--

**Figure 4-3. Sample OPORD**

(2) Fire Support. The priority of fires is to TF A initially and to the TF in contact once contact is made.

(3) Mines, Obstacles, and Fortifications. Identify critical checkpoints and obstacles shown on the obstacles overlay.

b. Subunit missions, as required.

c. Engineer Support. The priority of support is to the two lead TFs. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the TF in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.

(1) Report all enemy contact.

(2) Report all enemy obstacles.

(3) Report the crossing of phase lines

(4) Report additional information as required.

4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per the division's SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command.

b. Signal.

(1) Current signal operation instructions (SOI).

(2) Maintain radio-listening silence until initial contact with enemy.

**Figure 4-3. Sample OPORD (continued)**



## CHAPTER 5

### Training and Evaluation Outlines (T&EOs)

5-1. General. This chapter contains the T&EOs for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the unit. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks that support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. Structure. The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in table 5-1. The mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

5-3. Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

- a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit element that performs the task.
- b. Task. This describes the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.
- c. References. These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, it is not underlined.
- d. Iteration. This is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.
- e. Commander or Leader Assessment. The unit's leadership uses this to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit-leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the ratings listed below.
  - (1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
  - (2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
  - (3) U - Untrained. The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.
- f. Task Conditions. This describes the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.
- g. Task Standards.
  - (1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and should be understood by every soldier.
  - (2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-TC conditions. The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.

h. Task Steps and Performance Measures. This is a list of actions that are required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual task and their references. An asterisk (\*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO Column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon’s performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an X in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a GO for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task Performance/Evaluation Summary Block. This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the unit’s demonstrated performance as a GO or NO-GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting Individual Tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. The reference number, tasks number, and task title for each individual task are listed.

l. OPFOR Tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that the OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or “lose” to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished—not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. Usage. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

**Develop Intelligence**

Identify Topographic-Support Requirements (05-1-1389)..... 5-5  
 Conduct a Water-Crossing Site Reconnaissance (05-2-0403)..... 5-7  
 Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance (05-2-0408)..... 5-10  
 Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection (05-2-0413)..... 5-12  
 Execute Target Folder Battle Drills (05-2-1390)..... 5-15  
 Conduct a Route Classification (05-3-0402.05-R01A)..... 5-17  
 Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)..... 5-21  
 Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)..... 5-23

**Deploy/Conduct Maneuver**

Fight as Engineers (05-1-1200)..... 5-26  
 Perform Combat Trail Construction and Clearing (05-2-0006)..... 5-29  
 Report Obstacle Information (Company) (05-2-0025)..... 5-30  
 React to Contact (05-3-7122)..... 5-32  
 React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)..... 5-35  
 Perform Passage of Lines (07-2-0333.05-T01A)..... 5-37  
 Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)..... 5-41  
 Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)..... 5-44  
 Establish Unit Defense (07-3-0219.05-T01A)..... 5-48  
 Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A)..... 5-52  
 Defend a Battle Position (07-3-4129.05-T01A)..... 5-56  
 Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)..... 5-59  
 Prepare Personnel for Deployment (12-1-0409.05-T01A)..... 5-62

**Employ Firepower**

Coordinate the Integration of Air Defense for Mobility and Countermobility Operations (05-1-0200).....	5-64
Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS) (05-2-0100) .....	5-67

**Protect the Force**

Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A) .....	5-69
Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation (03-2-C312.05-T01A).....	5-71
Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A) .....	5-76
Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A) .....	5-78
Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A).....	5-80
Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A).....	5-82
Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A).....	5-84
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A).....	5-86
React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A) .....	5-88
Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A) .....	5-90
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A).....	5-92
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A) .....	5-94
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A) .....	5-98
Prepare an Obstacle Plan (05-2-0001).....	5-100
Conduct Minefield-Clearing Operations (05-2-0111).....	5-102
Conduct Breaching Operations (05-2-0114).....	5-106
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301).....	5-111
Plan for Survivability Operations (05-2-0508).....	5-114
Direct Survivability Construction (05-2-0510).....	5-116
Support a River-Crossing Operation (05-2-0600).....	5-118
Prepare Expedient Fords (05-2-0603).....	5-122
Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911).....	5-124
Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely Delivered Mines (05-3-0113).....	5-128
Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-0115.05-R01A).....	5-131
Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-0210).....	5-136
Establish a Company Defensive Position (07-2-0414.05-T01A).....	5-139
React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A) .....	5-142
Use Passive Air-Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A).....	5-144
Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A) .....	5-146
Perform Risk-Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A).....	5-149

**Perform CSS and Sustainment**

Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies (05-2-0042) .....	5-151
Coordinate for Food Service Support (05-2-0051) .....	5-153
Conduct Administrative Operations (05-2-1007).....	5-157
Conduct Combat Refueling Operations (05-2-1024).....	5-160
Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points (05-2-1068).....	5-162
Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A) .....	5-164
Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A) .....	5-167
Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A) .....	5-170
Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A).....	5-173
Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A) .....	5-175
Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A).....	5-177
Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A).....	5-179
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A).....	5-182

**Exercise Command and Control**

Report Engineer Information (05-1-0026).....	5-184
Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company) (05-2-0002).....	5-187
Prepare an Engineer Annex (05-2-0003).....	5-191
Establish a Command Post (CP) (05-2-0064).....	5-194
Integrate Engineer Elements into the Maneuver Staff (05-2-0300).....	5-196
Integrate Obstacles into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans (05-2-0314).....	5-198
Conduct Report Procedures (05-2-1218).....	5-200
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018.05-R01A).....	5-203
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A).....	5-210
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A).....	5-212
Participate in the Operations Order (OPORD) Process (12-1-0408.05-T01A).....	5-216
Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A).....	5-218
Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A).....	5-220

**Figure 5-1. List of T&EOs**



**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Identify Topographic-Support Requirements (05-1-1389)  
(FM 34-130) (FM 34-2) (FM 34-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The staff conducts continuous tactical operations during the development and implementation of an engineer intelligence-collection plan. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Identify the needs for standard and nonstandard topographic products that will support the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) process, satisfy questions raised in the priority intelligence requirements (PIR), and complete the intelligence annex to the operation order (OPORD) or operation plan (OPLAN) in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The staff identifies the commander's intelligence requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received the commander's planning guidance and concept of operations after receiving the mission from higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>b. Developed and prioritized the essential elements of information (EEI) and PIR.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Developed the PIR in the form of a question or statement.</li> <li>(2) Prepared the EEI to answer the PIR. The EEI included, but was not limited to--                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Friendly engineer capabilities.</li> <li>(b) Enemy engineer capabilities.</li> <li>(c) Enemy conventional and scatterable minefield locations.</li> <li>(d) Contaminated areas.</li> <li>(e) Engineer resources.</li> <li>(f) Electricity; gas; water; and petroleum, oils, lubricants (POL) resources.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The following products are provided by the topographic element: terrain; waterways/drainage; ports and harbors; roads (including military load classification [MLC]); railroads; trafficability; airfields; natural and manmade obstacles; and built-up areas.</p> <p>* 2. The staff develops a collection plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the PIR.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reviewed the commander's guidance and intent.</li> <li>(2) Considered the current situation.</li> <li>(3) Considered the mission.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Identified the EEI needed to answer the PIR.</li> <li>c. Implemented the collection strategy.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assessed the current database.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Reviewed the maps, charts, and imagery.</li> <li>(b) Checked the analysis, reports, and IPB products.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Requested products that answered the PIR questions and fulfilled mission directives and the commander's intent in order to fill gaps in the database.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Conduct a Water-Crossing Site Reconnaissance (05-2-0403)  
(FM 5-36) (FM 5-34) (FM 90-13)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company receives an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a water-crossing site reconnaissance. All necessary equipment is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element conducts the reconnaissance and identifies all the missions that are required to support the operation within the time specified in the OPORD. Locations are accurate to within 10 meters. Measurements and dimensions are accurate within plus or minus 10 percent. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader plans the site reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a map reconnaissance of the sites.</li> <li>b. Selected routes for movement to and from the sites.</li> <li>c. Selected the rally points.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader issues the OPORD.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned responsibilities and designated the far- and near-bank reconnaissance teams.</li> <li>b. Designated the movement methods and the routes to and from the sites.</li> <li>c. Described the action to take in the event of enemy contact.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader directs the movement to the site.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the team dismounted before arriving at the site as required by the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the team displaced tactically.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader observes and records access route conditions, to include--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Overhead obstructions with clearances of less than 4.3 meters.</li> <li>b. Reductions in the travel-way width less than 8 meters.</li> <li>c. Gradients (slopes) of 7 percent or greater.</li> <li>d. Curves having a radius of 25 meters or less.</li> <li>e. Road surface conditions.</li> <li>f. Obstacles that exist, such as road craters, mined areas, felled trees, or rubble.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The far-bank team conducts a far-bank reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the condition of various points that were identified during the digital map reconnaissance, to include-                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Bank heights.</li> <li>(2) Bank slopes.</li> <li>(3) Soil conditions.</li> <li>(4) Bank obstacles (natural or man-made).</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Estimated the gap width at the site.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Determined the gap (wet) conditions in the vicinity of the crossing site, to include-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) River depth at 3-meter intervals along the site.</li> <li>(2) Sandbars or other water obstacles.</li> <li>(3) Bottom conditions.</li> <li>(4) Fluctuations in the river's current.</li> </ul> <p>d. Collected any other information requested in the OPORD.</p> <p>e. Returned to the rally point designated by the squad or the section leader.</p> <p>6. The near-bank team conducts a near-bank reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the condition of the near bank along various points. See subtask 5a.</li> <li>b. Estimated the gap width (wet) at the site</li> <li>c. Measured the current velocity at the site.</li> <li>d. Collected any other information requested in the orders.</li> <li>e. Returned to the designated rally point.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The element leader receives the reconnaissance information from the team leader.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all required information was obtained.</li> <li>b. Disseminated all the information to the team members.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The element leader directs the movement from the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the team displaced tactically.</li> <li>b. Directed the movement to subsequent sites as required by the OPORD. Repeated subtasks 2 through 7 until the mission was completed.</li> <li>c. Directed the return to the squad's assembly area (AA).</li> </ul> <p>* 9. The element leader submits his report to the command element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a sketch of each site, to include the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Bank heights and slopes.</li> <li>(2) River-bottom profile.</li> <li>(3) Estimated river width</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Provided other information including-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The current velocity.</li> <li>(2) The soil conditions.</li> <li>(3) The route conditions leading to and from the site.</li> <li>(4) Obstacles.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-196-2002	Determine the Radius of Curves	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

**Task Number**

**Task Title**

**References**  
STP BREACHER

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Disrupt an Engineer Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0022)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance (05-2-0408)  
(FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company is tasked to plan and direct an engineer reconnaissance of a designated area. The area is secure, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company plans and directs platoon reconnaissance missions to gather sufficient information to fulfill the reconnaissance objectives. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The company plans the reconnaissance mission as defined in the battalion's operation order (OPORD).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gathered supporting intelligence data, such as map products and aerial photos.</li> <li>b. Established reconnaissance objectives, the main supply route (MSR), obstacle locations, general trafficability, decontamination points, and bivouac sites.</li> <li>c. Identified the platoon to perform the mission.</li> <li>d. Established the time, the distance, and the size of the zone or route to reconnoiter.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company commander determines the reconnaissance method.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected route reconnaissance when time was a critical factor.</li> <li>b. Selected zone reconnaissance when cross-country trafficability was important.</li> <li>c. Selected an area reconnaissance when the mission required specific information about a defined area.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: An area reconnaissance is more thorough and time-consuming than a zone reconnaissance.</p> <p>* 3. The company commander briefs the platoon on the reconnaissance mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conveyed the objective of the reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Defined the area or route to cover.</li> <li>c. Described the methods of reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Directed a hasty or deliberate reconnaissance.</li> <li>e. Provided additional guidance (attention to fords, bridges, bivouac sites, and contaminated areas).</li> <li>f. Ensured checkpoints were positioned for progress reports, assistance, and communications checks.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The platoon leader ensures that unit members have the minimum essential material needed to conduct the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the unit members had a map of the area, an overlay paper, a compass, and a tape measure.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the unit members received the appropriate forms: Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1248, 1249, 1250, 1251, 1252, and 1711-R.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Ensured that a secure mode, communications check radio was on hand.</p> <p>* 5. The company operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) reviews the reconnaissance report.</p> <p>    a. Ensured that the platoon accomplished the objective.</p> <p>    b. Ensured that members recorded dimensions (in meters) on the overlay; for example, road width, bridges, overhead clearance, constrictions to travel way, fords, tunnels, or underpasses.</p> <p>    c. Ensured that members recorded and annotated critical terrain features and obstacles using the appropriate symbols (see Field Manual [FM] 5-170) on the overlay at their geographical location (slopes, curves, fords, ferries, bridges, reduction in travel way, and constrictions).</p> <p>* 6. The company operations NCO updates the company terrain analysis and overlay. Prepares to brief the commander on the results of the reconnaissance mission.</p> <p>* 7. The company commander briefs the battalion commander and staff on the mission. Submits all reports to the battalion's Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) within the time constraints.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection (05-2-0413)  
 (FM 5-30) (FM 20-32) (FM 34-5)  
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-101) (FM 5-34)  
 (FM 5-36) (FM 5-410) (FM 5-430-00-1)  
 (FM 5-430-00-2) (FM 5-480) (FM 55-20)  
 (TM 55-208)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is conducting continuous tactical operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander and staff develop and implement an engineer intelligence plan to gather the essential elements of information (EEI) for subordinate and supporting elements to accomplish the mission successfully. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander and staff develop the intelligence collection plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the priority intelligence requirements (PIR). Normally, this is in the form of a question, but it may be a statement.</li> <li>b. Identified detailed information required to answer the PIR. These are called EEI and include, but are not limited to--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Friendly engineer capabilities.</li> <li>(2) Enemy engineer capabilities.</li> <li>(3) Enemy conventional and scatterable-minefield locations.</li> <li>(4) Terrain.</li> <li>(5) Waterways or drainage.</li> <li>(6) Ports and harbors.</li> <li>(7) Roads, including military load classification (MLC).</li> <li>(8) Railways.</li> <li>(9) Trafficability.</li> <li>(10) Airfields.</li> <li>(11) Natural and man-made obstacles.</li> <li>(12) Contaminated areas.</li> <li>(13) Built-up areas.</li> <li>(14) Engineer resources.</li> <li>(15) Electricity; gas; water; and petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) resources.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Identified units to collect the information.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designated maneuver units by placing the PIR and EEI in the maneuver operation order (OPORD).</li> <li>(2) Designated engineer units by placing the PIR and EEI in the engineer OPORD.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>2. The executive officer (XO) implements a collection plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed subordinate elements to do specific reconnaissances.</li> <li>b. Briefed the element leaders.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Stated the reconnaissance objectives.</li> <li>(2) Specified the area or route to reconnoiter.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Provided a suggested method of reconnaissance.                      (4) Presented any additional guidance from the commander, such as specific items to look for in a given area.</p> <p>c. Provided the units with forms and materials for the reconnaissance.</p> <p>d. Consolidated the information.</p> <p>(1) Directed subordinate element to forward the reconnaissance reports to the company operations section.                      (2) Charged the company to collate and summarize the reconnaissance and intelligence reports.                      (3) Instructed the company to maintain the following files:                      (a) Intelligence logs recording all incoming and outgoing communications.                      (b) Engineer reconnaissance reports.                      (c) Intelligence summaries (INTSUMs) and intelligence reports (INTREPs).                      (d) Engineer resource reports.                      (e) Minefield records.                      (f) Scatterable-minefield reports.                      (g) Obstacle reports.</p> <p>e. Developed intelligence by extracting information pertinent to the PIR and EEI from the reconnaissance and intelligence reports.</p> <p>* 3. The commander completes or updates the situation analysis of the engineer estimate.</p> <p>* 4. The commander disseminates the intelligence to engineer, maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) units.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Disrupt an Engineer Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0022)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** Execute Target Folder Battle Drills (05-2-1390)  
(TRADOC PAM 525-50)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company receives a mission. The commander has analyzed the mission and approved the restated mission. Courses of action (COAs) are being developed and analyzed. As COAs are being developed, a detailed look at decision points, objectives, engagement areas (EAs), or other targets may be required for COA comparison and risk assessment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The topographic-support element will prepare the appropriate target folder and deliver it, either manually or electronically, to the staff, adhering to the commander's timeline and synchronization matrix. Staff elements will identify these areas by grid coordinate and request a target folder. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The topographic-support element receives the request for the target folder.		
2. The topographic-support element executes appropriate battle drills to create the tactical decision aids for the requestor to visualize the military aspects of the terrain.		
3. The topographic-support element delivers the target folder, either electronically or manually.		
4. The topographic-support element updates the target folder as new information becomes available.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-053-35-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

**TASK:** Conduct a Route Classification (05-3-0402.05-R01A)  
 (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34) (FM 7-7J)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a route reconnaissance over a specified route. The area is secure, but enemy contact is possible. Digital units have performed functionality checks of digital systems and can receive orders and overlays and conduct planning using digital equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element uses the correct symbols to prepare and submit an overlay identifying the obstacles. Digital units report through digital means by sending appropriate messages or graphic overlays, and follow up with Department of the Army (DA) forms as appropriate. Obstructions, terrain features, critical points, and route conditions will be reported. The locations are accurate within 10 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and classifications are accurate within 10 percent. The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader received a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a route reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated through the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or task force (TF) engineer for ground-security forces or aviation-security forces.</li> <li>b. Requested an enemy situation brief from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</li> <li>c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the start points (SPs), release points (RPs), route, and terrain.</li> <li>d. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. The reconnaissance met the commander's intent and requirements; for example, the route classification, double-flow traffic, obstructions, barriers, and bypasses.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader prepares an overlay of the specified route.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the route was to scale on the overlay and showed the limit of sector symbols (one each at the start and end points).</li> <li>b. Plotted at least two grid reference points and a grid or a magnetic north arrow.</li> <li>c. Prepared the title block with the following information:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The route-classification formula.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) The name, the rank, and the social security number (SSN) of the person in charge of performing the classification.</p> <p>(3) The unit conducting the classification.</p> <p>(4) The date-time group (DTG).</p> <p>(5) The map name, edition, and scale.</p> <p>(6) Any remarks necessary to ensure complete understanding of the information on the overlay.</p> <p>NOTE: See Field Manual (FM) 5-170 for more detailed information</p> <p>(7) Digitally capable units will submit reports electronically and follow up with a hard copy.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader briefs the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission.</p> <p>a. Used the five-paragraph order format.</p> <p>(1) Included the route to reconnoiter.</p> <p>(2) Included the method of reconnaissance, which was either the hasty method or the deliberate method.</p> <p>(3) Included the reconnaissance objectives; for example, the obstacle location, trafficability, and water points.</p> <p>(4) Included radio communications for the progress report, requests for assistance, and communications check.</p> <p>(5) Included the actions that the security team and the squad members took upon enemy contact.</p> <p>(6) Included the time and distance factors.</p> <p>(7) Included the noise and light discipline.</p> <p>b. Planned for a double flow of tracked vehicles unless otherwise directed by the commander.</p> <p>c. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</p> <p>d. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</p> <p>e. Drew the required equipment, forms, and material for reconnaissance.</p> <p>(1) Ensured that the required DA Forms 1248, 1249, 1250, 1251, 1252, and 1711-R were available.</p> <p>4. The element reconnoiters the specific route, measuring, and recording information along the route.</p> <p>a. Determined the travel-way width for trafficability.</p> <p>NOTE: Single-flow wheeled traffic is 5.5 to 7.3 meters wide and single-flow tracked traffic is 6-to-8 meters wide. Double-flow wheeled traffic is 7.3 meters wide and double-flow tracked traffic is 8 meters wide. In the absence of any guidance, the element reconnoiters for double-flow tracked traffic.</p> <p>b. Determined the route type (X, Y, or Z).</p> <p>NOTE: X = all-weather, Y = limited all-weather, Z = fair-weather route.</p> <p>c. Determined the military load classification (MLC). The element classified the entire route according to the lowest load classification of any section of the route.</p> <p>d. Identified the underwater structures that were not sound or capable of holding the desired MLC.</p> <p>e. Recorded on the overlay the terrain features that were seen along the route; for example, the fords, ferries, bridges, slopes, curves, constriction, man-made obstacles, and overhead clearance.</p> <p>f. Identified, for detailed explanation on DA Form 1711-R, any of the critical points spotted on the route; for example, terrain features or obstacles. See FM 5-170.</p> <p>g. Recorded all the measurements in meters and on DA Form 1711-R.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 5. The element leader with the entire reconnaissance team is debriefed by the S3, S2, or TF engineer and turns over the required reconnaissance forms and completed overlays. The unit's TACSOP or SOP will determine the requirements for the debriefing and who is required to attend.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Completed the overlay with all the appropriate symbols recorded at their geographical location.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the route-classification formula was present and located over the title block.</li> <li>c. Filled out the form(s) as required by the commander.</li> <li>d. Recorded the measurements on the overlay in meters.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element leader briefed the commander, S2, S3, or TF engineer on the reconnaissance mission and then submitted the overlays, reports, and DA Form(s) 1711-R to the commander within the prescribed time on the OPORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided the required reconnaissance forms to the commander within the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD.</li> <li>b. Provided required overlays to the commander within the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** Disrupt a Route Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0021)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.



**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

**TASK:** Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.40)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy's equipment and documents have been captured. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, radios, and so forth.</li> <li>b. Annotated the date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of capture.</li> <li>d. Noted the capturing unit.</li> <li>e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag, if the items were taken from the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader reports the capture of the equipment and documents to higher HQ.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and documents.</li> <li>b. Stated the date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Identified the capturing unit.</li> <li>d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment.</li> <li>b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)  
 (AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 19-30)  
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)  
 (FM 34-60)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is operating where the enemy can detect it. The enemy can employ electronic warfare (EW) measures and air- and ground-reconnaissance units. It can also use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising its main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The leaders check or perform information-security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis.</li> <li>b. Prohibited the fraternization with civilians, as applicable.</li> <li>c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection.</li> <li>d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information.</li> <li>e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.</li> <li>f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure.</li> </ul> <p>2. The platoon performs camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used natural concealment and camouflage materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground and air observation.</li> <li>b. Moved on covered and concealed routes.</li> <li>c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick.</li> <li>d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings.</li> </ul> <p>3. The platoon camouflages the individual's positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages the equipment to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit's position.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged the earth berms.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the camouflage nets were properly erected.</li> <li>d. Avoided crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions.                      f. Ensured that the vehicles that were parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted.                      g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage, as needed.                      h. Avoided movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection.</p> <p>4. The platoon employs communications security (COMSEC), and the company's net control station (NCS) enforces COMSEC.                      a. Enforced the procedures in the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the standing signal instructions (SSI), such as challenges, authentications decoding, and call signs and frequencies. The platoon ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy.                      b. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures.                      c. Followed the COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence.                      d. Followed the procedures for operations during jamming.                      e. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service.                      f. Used visual signals according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>5. The platoon employs physical-security measures.                      a. Employed the observation posts (OPs).                      b. Employed the counter-reconnaissance patrols.                      c. Followed the stand-to procedures.                      d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted.                      e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire.                      f. Used the challenge and password.                      g. Limited the access into the unit's area.                      h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.                      i. Picked up the litter.                      j. Employed the air guards.</p> <p>* 6. The platoon leader and all leaders enforce noise and light discipline.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-325-4425	EMPLOY AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4426	RECOVER AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

**TASK:** Fight as Engineers (05-1-1200)  
 (FM 5-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting continuous tactical operations in all weather conditions. The commanding general directs the battalion to fight as engineers. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** According to the battalion's standing operating procedure (SOP), the engineer battalion reorganizes as an engineer or infantry battalion within the required period of time. All equipment and personnel not used in this role move to an equipment park or are attached to another unit. The reorganized battalion receives augmentation from air defense, fire support, antitank units, and a medical element if available. Digital units have the capability to send and receive information via frequency modulated (FM) and digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The battalion commander decides who will be the unit's fire-support officer (FSO).</p> <p>2. The FSO makes immediate coordination for air-defense artillery, artillery support, and other necessary support for the unit.</p> <p>3. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) updates the personnel status. If required, requests personnel to bring the battalion to its authorized strength.</p> <p>4. If necessary, the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) organizes scout elements from organic assets to accomplish assigned missions.</p> <p>5. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) prepares for infantry-type missions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Requested any support that the FSO needed; for example, air-defense artillery, mortars, field artillery, and antitank elements.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Initiated the estimation process for infantry-type missions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Designated the company's assembly areas (AAs).</p> <p>6. The Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) prepares field and combat trains.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Organized a support platoon consisting of all fuel, ammunition, and cargo hauling assets to support the line companies' new needs.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds. Camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Requested additional Class V (ammunition) required by organic weapons and antitank systems, as necessary.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Consolidated unit mess and maintenance assets under the battalion's control in the field trains.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Designated the location of the engineer equipment park and the controlling team chief, if necessary. (1) Located the equipment park in a covered and concealed position. (2) Located the equipment park on defensible terrain.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Assembly-Area (AA) Activities (5-OPFOR-0013)

**CONDITION:** Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's AA activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).



**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Perform Combat Trail Construction and Clearing (05-2-0006)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-430-00-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) that is engaged in combat in an assigned area of operations (AO). Elements of a combat-support-equipment (CSE) company are available to the engineer company as required. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer company is able to construct trails and bypasses required to maintain movement of the TF combat and CSE elements. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The engineer company command post (CP) maintains the status of essential routes.		
2. The engineer company conducts a reconnaissance to verify the requirements for construction, repair, and clearance of routes and bypasses.		
3. The engineer company commander organizes assets to accomplish trail or bypass tasks and coordinates the supply of required materials.		
4. The engineer company commander directs the movement to the sites.		
5. The engineer company commander supervises the mission execution and receives the reports of progress.		
6. The engineer company CP receives and reports the status.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Report Obstacle Information (Company) (05-2-0025)  
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives obstacle and scatterable-mine (SCATMINE) information from subordinate elements and the battalion. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Higher headquarters (HQ) and subordinate units have accurate and timely information on obstacles in the area of operations (AO). Digital units send reports, orders, and messages and gain intelligence information via frequency modulated (FM) or digital systems. The location of obstacles and other reports are submitted through the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to update the common operational picture (COP), the situational awareness (SA), and the obstacle overlays. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element receives obstacle information required by the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and may include--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. A status report, called an obstacle document (OBSDOC), that gives the serial number, type, location (eight-digit and coordinate), progress, and completion date of obstacles, and the date and time the report was generated.</li> <li>b. A SCATMINE record and report or SCATMINE warning report. See Field Manual (FM) 20-32.</li> <li>c. A map sheet(s).</li> <li>d. The enemy situation.</li> <li>e. Additional assets or equipment required. Notified the supply section and the platoons of the type, quantity, and personnel.</li> <li>f. Execution of the obstacle (time, unit, type, location, and serial number).</li> <li>g. Obstacle hand-off (time, unit, type, location, and serial number).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element reports obstacle information to the supported unit and the higher engineer command.</p> <p>3. The officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) reports to the commander on the type of obstacles; the unit responsible for emplacement, progress, completion date, hand-off, and execution of the obstacles; the enemy situation; and the execution and plotting of the commander's guidance on scatterable mines. See FM 20-32.</p> <p>4. The OIC or the NCOIC briefs the team on the type, serial number, location, emplacement progress, and possible hand-off of obstacles; relocation of material; emplacement and execution of scatterable mines; and the unit and/or location of tasked elements, if assistance is required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The OIC or the NCOIC reports to the supported or parent unit (based on the command or support relationship) on the requirements for material, equipment, a recovery vehicle, maintenance support, obstacle material, communications equipment, the mission location, a map sheet(s), and platoons needing assistance.</p> <p>6. The operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) records the obstacle information from the platoons and the battalion's Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updated the SA and obstacle overlays with the team locations; emplaced, executed, and handed-off obstacles; intended and executed SCATMINE targets; and encountered obstacle locations.</li> <li>b. Maintained an accurate status of emplaced, executed, handed-off, and encountered obstacles, and intended and executed SCATMINE targets, by maintaining an updated and current digital SA OBSDOC.</li> <li>c. Maintained files of sent reports.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the battalion's S3 to provide updates on the status of obstacles emplaced by the company, obstacle execution, SCATMINES, obstacle enhancement, and any required assistance.</li> </ul> <p>7. The element leader briefs the supported commander or higher engineer on SCATMINES, reserve targets, and other obstacles, to include their status, location, self-destruct times, dimensions, delivery means, and hand-off.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** React to Contact (05-3-7122)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 17-95)  
 (FM 5-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon, moving mounted or dismounted, makes visual contact with the enemy or encounters enemy fire. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element returns fire within 3 seconds, locates and engages the enemy with well-aimed fire within 3 more seconds, and causes at least one enemy casualty. The leader can point out at least one-half of the enemy positions and identify the types of weapons, such as small arms or light machine guns. Digital units send messages and reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element makes visual contact with the enemy, evaluates the situation, and determines a course of action (COA).  * 2. The element leader chooses to bypass if the enemy is not a threat and the mission is not impeded.  * 3. The element leader gives the order to conduct fire and movement if the enemy is a threat or the mission is impeded.  4. The element reacts to enemy fire. a. Took cover immediately and returned fire within 3 seconds. b. Located actual or suspected enemy positions and engaged them with well-aimed fire within 3 more seconds. c. Made contact (visual or verbal) with the element members on their left and right.  * 5. The element leader communicates with the element members. a. Relayed commands and signals to the squad leaders. b. Made frequent visual contact with the squad leaders.  * 6. The squad leaders communicate with the squad members. a. Checked the status of the squad members either visually or verbally. b. Relayed commands and signals from the element leader.  * 7. The element leader evaluates the situation and determines the COA.		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
a. Used an assault element to attack the objective by using fire and movement if the enemy was outnumbered or the mission was impeded. b. Gave the order to disengage to defend from another battle position, prepared a counterattack, withdrew, or continued the mission if the element was outnumbered.  * 8. The element leader sends a spot report (SPOTREP) and includes enemy contact and casualty information.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-5700.02-0001	Enforce Platoon and Company Communications Security Measures	STP 21-II-MQS
01-9001.19-0001	Take Charge of a Platoon or Equivalent Organization	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2027	LOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2028	UNLOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4401	PERFORM SAFETY CHECKS ON HAND GRENADES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4407	EMPLOY HAND GRENADES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0502	MOVE UNDER DIRECT FIRE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0510	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE WHILE DISMOUNTED	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Surrender to the Capturing Unit on the Battlefield (5-OPFOR-0024)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has captured opposing forces' (OPFOR) soldiers, documents, and equipment sensitive to the OPFOR tactical operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal or destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert INCOMING or a round impacts on or near their location. Digital units have performed functionality checks and all systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Within two seconds of the alert, the leader designates the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moves to the specified location. Digital units having advanced digital capability report the unit's new location through frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means, as required by the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) to update the situational awareness (SA) and the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted. 2. The element leader gives the direction and the distance for the unit to move; for example, 3 o'clock, 200 meters. 3. The vehicle commanders repeat the INCOMING to squad personnel. 4. The element personnel close all hatches. * 5. The element drivers move rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader. 6. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted. a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicle-- (1) Halted as closely as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount. (2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader. b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel, keeping low, ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader. 7. The element reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position. a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Protected personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions, if dismounted.  8. The element's members move to designated rally points according to the element's operation order (OPORD).  9. The element establishes immediate security at the designated rally point.  10. The element consolidates and reorganizes.  11. The element leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP). Digital units having enhanced reporting capability report using digital capability.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations using Persistent and Nonpersistent Chemical Weapons (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.



**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

**TASK:** Perform Passage of Lines (07-2-0333.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 21-60) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to conduct a passage of lines. The element is operating as a separate unit. The enemy can attack with indirect fire, aircraft, or company-size mounted or dismounted forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company moves all personnel and equipment through the stationary unit no later than the time specified in the order. The unit's main body is not surprised by the enemy during the departure from friendly lines. The unit sustains no casualties from friendly fire. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives the operation order (OPORD).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated planning for the operation.</li> <li>b. Conducted coordination for the operation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The passing element leader meets with the stationary element leader.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Arranged for a specific time.</li> <li>b. Determined the meeting location.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The passing element leader or his authorized representative coordinates the passage through and the reentry of lines with the forward element leader or his authorized representative.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that personnel from both elements were aware of each element's identification.</li> <li>b. Kept the stationary element leader informed of the size of the passing element.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the times of departure and return.</li> <li>d. Defined the area of operations (AO).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The passing leader or his authorized representative coordinates with the stationary leader.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Exchanged enemy intelligence information.</li> <li>b. Completed a joint reconnaissance of the position.</li> <li>c. Explained the passing element's scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>d. Coordinated recognition signals for the passage, both near and far.</li> <li>e. Planned for guides and passage control measures.</li> <li>f. Coordinated security measures for the passage.</li> <li>g. Designated fire-support (FS) responsibilities and fire plans.</li> <li>h. Exchanged information on the terrain and the existing obstacles.</li> <li>i. Determined when and where the battle handover occurs.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>j. Coordinated combat-service support (CSS) for the items left on the position.</p> <p>* 5. Both leaders coordinate specific control measures for the passage.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned the locations of the contact points.</li> <li>b. Pointed the locations of the passage points.</li> <li>c. Identified release points (RPs) and the battle handover line.</li> <li>d. Exchanged call signs, frequencies, code words, signals, and challenge and passwords.</li> </ol> <p>* 6. Both leaders perform a leader reconnaissance of the passage area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Located the passage-of-lines points.</li> <li>b. Identified the obstacle locations and safety lines.</li> <li>c. Pointed out the RPs.</li> <li>d. Reconnoitered the assembly area (AA) for the rearward passage.</li> <li>e. Identified the contact points.</li> <li>f. Walked the stationary element positions.</li> <li>g. Identified combat support (CS) and CSS elements (command posts [CPs], observation posts [OPs], and antiarmor and mortar positions).</li> <li>h. Ensured that the leader's reconnaissance and other activities did not reveal the operation to the enemy.</li> </ol> <p>* 7. The passing leader checks with other leaders who will be operating in the same or adjacent areas.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Exchanged intelligence information on the enemy.</li> <li>b. Exchanged terrain data.</li> </ol> <p>8. The passing element arrives in the stationary element area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved into a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting with the stationary leader.</li> <li>b. Started final preparations for the passage of lines.</li> </ol> <p>9. The passing element leader issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the element on what was happening and what was going to happen.</li> <li>b. Confirmed the chain of command.</li> <li>c. Prescribed actions to be taken on contact.</li> <li>d. Briefed actions to be taken in the absence of the leader.</li> <li>e. Provided a time schedule, a suspense list, and any limits on actions.</li> </ol> <p>*10. The passing element leader completes coordination with the stationary element leader.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Confirmed recognition signals for the passage, both near and far.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the guides.</li> <li>c. Confirmed traffic-control measures.</li> <li>d. Confirmed security measures for the passage.</li> <li>e. Collocated both leaders to observe critical areas, make timely decisions, and facilitate battle handover.</li> </ol> <p>11. The passing element moves to a position near the point of contact.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved at the designated time.</li> <li>b. Provided cover and concealment during movement and at the position near the point of contact.</li> </ol> <p>12. The passing element's security team passes through the passage lanes.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Linked up with the guides from the stationary element.</li> <li>b. Moved with the guides from the contact points through the passage lanes and passage points to the RPs.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Cleared the area forward of the RPs to the first covered and concealed position.</p> <p>d. Reported when the area was secure.</p> <p>13. The remainder of the passage element moves through the passage lanes.</p> <p>a. Moved forward to the RPs.</p> <p>b. Identified and accounted for passage personnel (as confirmed by the guides) as the element passed through the RP.</p> <p>c. Ensured that movement was continuous throughout the passage.</p> <p>d. Executed a security halt after the company had moved beyond the friendly element's final protective fires (FPF).</p> <p>e. Executed the movement of the executive officer (XO), the first sergeant (1SG), and the platoon sergeant (PSG) from the RP forward, only after the leader was sure that he did not have to withdraw through the passage point.</p> <p>14. The passing element makes a reentry through the friendly lines.</p> <p>a. Halted the element and established the reentry rally point.</p> <p>NOTE to the National Guard (NG): If in contact with the enemy, the element does not halt. The contact party or guides from the stationary element lead the element through the passage points, or long-range signals are used.</p> <p>b. Contacted the forward element by radio and told them, by the use of a prearranged code word, that the element was ready to reenter. (The leader may opt to keep the element outside of friendly lines until daybreak.)</p> <p>c. Acknowledged receipt of the message.</p> <p>15. The forward element directs a security team on an azimuth and distance to the contact point.</p> <p>a. Established contact with the stationary element guides using far- and near-recognition signals.</p> <p>b. Signaled the element forward or went back and led the element to the passage point.</p> <p>c. Counted and identified each element as it passed through the passage point (1SG or XO and PSG).</p> <p>16. The element, led by a guide from the stationary element, moves through the passage point and to the AA behind the friendly element. The leader--</p> <p>a. Ensured that casualties were treated and evacuated upon arrival at the AA.</p> <p>b. Reported to the stationary element CP; provided tactical information concerning the area of responsibility.</p> <p>17. The passing leader links up with his element in the AA.</p> <p>a. Prepared the element for movement to a secure area.</p> <p>b. Led the element to a secure area.</p> <p>c. Conducted the debriefing.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1006	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0820	ANALYZE TERRAIN	STP 21-24-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)  
 (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, combined-arms support, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the element's main body into its respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Movement into the AA is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the AA. The enemy does not surprise the element's main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the quartering-party personnel.</li> <li>b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and crew, based on transportation and security requirements.</li> <li>c. Determined the essential equipment needed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the location of the AA.</li> <li>b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA.</li> <li>c. Relayed the time of the main body's arrival at the AA.</li> <li>d. Identified the order of march.</li> <li>e. Relayed the nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) conditions.</li> <li>f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact.</li> <li>g. Established the MOPP level.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The element quartering party moves along the route of march.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained security.</li> <li>b. Reconnoitered the route of march from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP) using the digital situational awareness (SA) overlay on Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</li> <li>c. Monitored for NBC contamination.</li> <li>d. Marked the obstacles and bypass routes.</li> <li>e. Reported critical information to the element quartering-party leader.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The quartering party moves into the element AA and prepares the area for the element's arrival.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected and marked the routes from the RP to the new location.</li> <li>b. Selected and posted the guides in time to meet the main body.</li> <li>c. Marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes.</li> <li>d. Marked the vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security.</li> <li>e. Marked or removed the mines and obstacles.</li> <li>f. Organized and posted local security.</li> </ol> <p>5. The element occupies the AA.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the quartering-party guides (waiting in covered and concealed positions) to selected or designated areas without halting.</li> <li>b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces.</li> </ol> <p>6. The element establishes the AA's perimeter.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the priority of work, which may vary by the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>b. Positioned the vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire.</li> <li>c. Established the observation posts (OPs) on the critical avenues of approach.</li> <li>d. Established digital and frequency modulated (FM) communications between all positions. Used wire communications, if the time and situation permitted.</li> <li>e. Prepared the range cards.</li> <li>f. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions.</li> <li>g. Cleared the fields of fire.</li> <li>h. Camouflaged the positions.</li> <li>i. Emplaced the chemical-agent alarms and the early-warning devices.</li> </ol> <p>7. The element performs internal operation of the AA.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>b. Distributed the ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment.</li> <li>c. Established the personal-hygiene and field-sanitation sites.</li> <li>d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline.</li> <li>e. Instituted the rest plan for element members and leaders.</li> <li>f. Inspected the AA.</li> </ol> <p>* 8. The element leader coordinates with the element on the left and the right as a minimum.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements.</li> <li>b. Exchanged information on the OP locations and the element's signals.</li> <li>c. Coordinated local counterattacks.</li> <li>d. Developed a defensive plan and forwarded it to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ol> <p>9. The leaders develop contingency plans.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed an evacuation plan.</li> <li>b. Developed a plan of action on enemy contact.</li> </ol> <p>10. The unit conducts rehearsals.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan.</li> <li>b. Rehearsed the plan of action on enemy contact.</li> </ol>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE	STP 21-24-SMCT
04-3302.01-0003	Conduct a Reconnaissance	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0007	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-326-0503	MOVE OVER, THROUGH, OR AROUND OBSTACLES (EXCEPT MINEFIELDS)	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0513	SELECT TEMPORARY FIGHTING POSITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1006	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0852	CLEAR A FIELD OF FIRE	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An operation order (OPORD) requires the element to move and conduct operations at a new location. The OPORD provides the new location that the element must move to. There is a possibility of enemy contact with threat patrols up to platoon and company size. Digital units have completed functionality checks of digital systems and they are operational. Threat-mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company's standing operating procedure (SOP) is available and contains movement readiness levels and current loading plans. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. Digital units send and receive orders, overlays and locations via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the start point (SP).</li> <li>b. Identified the locations of friendly units.</li> <li>c. Pointed out the potential ambush sites.</li> <li>d. Identified the checkpoints.</li> <li>e. Pointed out the sites to be used for scheduled halts.</li> <li>f. Indicated the release point (RP).</li> </ul> <p>2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Wore the designated MOPP gear.</li> <li>b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm.</li> <li>c. Monitored radiation-monitoring devices.</li> <li>d. Verified the map information.</li> <li>e. Listed the capacities of bridges and underpasses.</li> <li>f. Listed the locations of culverts, ferries, foraging areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites.</li> <li>g. Prepared the map overlay.</li> <li>h. Computed the travel time.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Prepared the strip map.</li> <li>* 3. The convoy commander coordinates with higher headquarters (HQ) for the following required support:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Military Police (MP).</li> <li>b. Medical.</li> <li>c. Fire support (FS).</li> <li>d. Engineer.</li> <li>e. Maintenance contact team.</li> <li>f. Additional requirements, as required.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The company prepares the vehicles and the equipment.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>b. Corrected minor deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Reported major deficiencies.</li> <li>d. Hardened the vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials.</li> <li>e. Covered unit identification markings on the vehicles and personnel.</li> <li>f. Covered or removed the reflective surfaces.</li> <li>g. Placed the antennas at their lowest height.</li> <li>h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting, consistent with operational requirements.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned cargo-vehicle positions.</li> <li>b. Positioned the control vehicles without setting a pattern.</li> <li>c. Assigned the recovery vehicles position.</li> <li>d. Arranged the hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy.</li> <li>e. Specified passenger locations.</li> <li>f. Appointed air guards.</li> <li>g. Organized the trail party element.</li> <li>h. Provided vehicle-position listings to the trail party leader.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 6. The convoy commander briefs the convoy personnel.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver.</li> <li>b. Identified the convoy chain of command.</li> <li>c. Detailed the convoy route.</li> <li>d. Prescribed the rate-of-march speed and the catch-up speed.</li> <li>e. Specified convoy intervals.</li> <li>f. Identified the scheduled halts.</li> <li>g. Briefed the accident and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>h. Briefed the immediate-action security measures.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Briefed the blackout-condition procedures.</li> <li>j. Specified the location of medical support.</li> <li>k. Specified the location of maintenance support.</li> <li>l. Briefed the communication procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>m. Specified the location and identification of the destination.</li> </ul> </li> <li>7. The convoy crosses the SP.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed at the specified time.</li> <li>b. Verified that the vehicles crossed the SP.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the SP-crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 8. The convoy commander provides the convoy information to higher HQ.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the SP-crossing time.</li> <li>b. Reported the checkpoints clearance, when crossed.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Pointed out the data that conflicted with maps.</li> <li>d. Employed the correct signal operation instructions (SOI) codes in all transmissions.</li> <li>e. Reported the RP-crossing time.</li> </ul> <p>9. The convoy maintains march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the designated march speed.</li> <li>b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals.</li> <li>c. Crossed checkpoints as scheduled.</li> <li>d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals.</li> <li>e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts.</li> </ul> <p>10. The company conducts a scheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time.</li> <li>b. Maintained the prescribed vehicular intervals.</li> <li>c. Moved the vehicles off the road.</li> <li>d. Established local security.</li> <li>e. Performed PMCS.</li> <li>f. Inspected vehicle loads.</li> <li>g. Departed at the specified times.</li> </ul> <p>11. The company conducts an unscheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted the march column.</li> <li>b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ.</li> <li>c. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals.</li> <li>d. Established local security.</li> <li>e. Reported resumption of the march to higher HQ.</li> </ul> <p>12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a visual adjustment period.</li> <li>b. Prepared the vehicles for blackout conditions.</li> <li>c. Maintained the prescribed vehicle distances.</li> <li>d. Wore night-vision goggles (specified personnel).</li> <li>e. Wore regular eye-protection goggles.</li> <li>f. Employed ground guides during poor visibility periods.</li> </ul> <p>13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the disabled vehicles.</li> <li>b. Repaired disabled vehicles, when possible.</li> <li>c. Towed the vehicles.</li> <li>d. Reported vehicle status to the convoy commander.</li> </ul> <p>14. The convoy moves through urban areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions.</li> <li>b. Employed close-column formation.</li> <li>c. Obeyed traffic-control directions.</li> <li>d. Employed direction guides at critical intersections.</li> </ul> <p>15. The convoy crosses the RP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed at the specified time.</li> <li>b. Verified that the vehicles had crossed the RP.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Establish Unit Defense (07-3-0219.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-8) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) with a mission to occupy part of a larger unit's defensive sector, or is isolated and must provide its own security or defense. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The element may be opposed by as much as a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element completes all preparations for the defense not later than the time specified in the order. Digital units will report their location, and send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means to provide a friendly-unit template of the location. The enemy does not surprise the platoon. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader performs a leader's reconnaissance of the tentative defensive position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Searched the area to ensure that it was free of the enemy, mines, and booby traps.</li> <li>b. Established local security.</li> <li>c. Surveyed the area for nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) contamination.</li> <li>d. Designated sectors and general locations for the operations, vehicles, and automatic and antiarmor weapons, based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: At night, the designation of positions must be more exact. Leaders may elect to reconnoiter the area first, position the observation posts (OPs), and then have the guides bring the other members into position.</p> <p>2. The designated security or operation team moves to assigned positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Emplaced the M8A1 chemical alarm system, if assigned, within 5 minutes of occupying the OP.</li> <li>b. Positioned the OP within range of the supporting small-arms fire.</li> <li>c. Provided cover and concealment for the OP personnel.</li> <li>d. Designated the covered and concealed routes to and from the OP.</li> <li>e. Established communications from the operations to the unit's command post (CP). The primary means should be wire, supplemented by messenger and radio.</li> <li>f. Disseminated the locations of all friendly personnel in the sector.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The platoon leader and the platoon forward observer (FO) designate targets to support the OP.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the target reference points (TRPs).</li> <li>b. Included the OP targets within the fire plan.</li> </ol> <p>4. The OP team provides early warning.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided continuous early warning out to a range that warned of enemy observation, direct fire, or assault on the main body.</li> <li>b. Detected all enemy activity within the vicinity of the unit's position.</li> <li>c. Adjusted illumination or high-explosive (HE) rounds on enemy targets.</li> <li>d. Emplaced expedient early-warning devices before dark, if possible.</li> <li>e. Demonstrated the correct use of the current challenge and password.</li> <li>f. Alternated the OP sites when required, due to the changing visibility or enemy activity.</li> </ol> <p>* 5. The platoon leader designates the primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions for key weapons or vehicles, where applicable, while emplacing the rest of the platoon.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned the machine guns to obtain grazing fire along the most likely dismounted avenue of approach (AA).</li> <li>b. Positioned the antiarmor weapons to cover the likely armor AA or the assigned engagement area (EA).</li> <li>c. Ensured that the positions were mutually supported along armor and dismounted infantry AAs.</li> <li>d. Positioned the M203 grenade launchers, if assigned, to cover dead space in the terrain outside the hand grenade range.</li> </ol> <p>* 6. The leaders place fighting positions to engage targets in designated sectors of fire, covering the most dangerous AAs first.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the sector of fire based on the type of weapon and the weapon's range.</li> <li>b. Assigned all personnel to a fighting position.</li> </ol> <p>* 7. The platoon leader coordinates or contacts adjacent units.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established boundary responsibilities.</li> <li>b. Discovered and eliminated any gaps in the defensive sector.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the observation and fires overlapped.</li> </ol> <p>8. The platoon occupies defensive positions.</p> <p>NOTE: The leader establishes task priorities. Normally these are in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP), but can be modified as needed (based on METT-TC considerations) by the platoon leader or the company commander.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Occupied the assigned positions, physically.</li> <li>b. Reconnoitered physically in front of each position to become familiar with the terrain, to locate dead space, and to view the terrain from the enemy's perspective.</li> <li>c. Prepared and forwarded the crew-served weapons range cards to the squad leader within 15 minutes of positioning.</li> <li>d. Installed the aiming stakes.</li> <li>e. Cleared the fields of fire.</li> <li>f. Emplaced the obstacles according to the company's obstacle plan.</li> <li>g. Dug fighting positions to armpit depth with 18 inches of parapet.</li> <li>h. Constructed overhead cover for the fighting position.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Camouflaged the positions and vehicles from aerial and ground observation. Ensured that the fighting positions could not be detected from a distance of more than 35 meters from the front of the position.</li> <li>j. Stockpiled ammunition, food, and water.</li> <li>k. Constructed alternate and supplementary positions.</li> <li>l. Ensured that all platoon members knew the platoon CP location.</li> </ul> <p>* 9. The platoon leader with the fire support team (FIST) or FO, if applicable, plans for the employment of indirect fires.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned the fires along the enemy AAs.</li> <li>b. Planned the fires at known or likely enemy positions.</li> <li>c. Planned the final protective fires (FPF), if allocated.</li> <li>d. Registered and adjusted the TRPs, if available and the situation permitted.</li> </ul> <p>10. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) establishes communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used wire as the primary communications, if available.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the platoon or company CP had communications with operations, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and fire support.</li> <li>c. Conducted periodic communications checks to ensure that all communications were operational.</li> <li>d. Planned and provided for an alternate means of communications.</li> </ul> <p>*11. The squad leader prepares a sector sketch.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the main terrain features and the range to them.</li> <li>b. Identified the location of the squad's fighting positions.</li> <li>c. Indicated the primary and secondary sectors of fire for each position.</li> <li>d. Identified the type of weapon and fire control measures (FPF, principle direction of fire [PDF], and final protective line [FPL]) for each position.</li> <li>e. Identified the squad leader's position and the location of the OPs.</li> <li>f. Marked dead space on the sketch.</li> <li>g. Identified the location of the obstacles.</li> <li>h. Indicated the direction of north.</li> <li>i. Forwarded a copy of the sector sketch to the platoon leader within 30 minutes of being assigned a sector.</li> </ul> <p>*12. The platoon leader prepares a platoon sector sketch.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the platoon sector or the EA.</li> <li>b. Denoted the primary, alternate, and supplementary squad positions and the sectors of fire.</li> <li>c. Indicated the location of the vehicles, antiarmor and automatic weapons' positions with the primary sectors of fire, the FPL or the PDF for the primary vehicle weapons system, automatic weapons, and the TRPs.</li> <li>d. Identified the location of the OPs and the patrol routes, if any had been planned.</li> <li>e. Outlined the maximum engagement lines for the primary weapon systems.</li> <li>f. Identified the location of indirect-fire targets and FPFs, if any had been allocated.</li> <li>g. Indicated the direction of north.</li> <li>h. Illustrated the unit identification, up to the company level.</li> <li>i. Indicated the date-time group.</li> <li>j. Identified the position of the platoon CP.</li> <li>k. Forwarded a copy of the platoon sector sketch to the company commander within 1 hour of assigning squad leaders sectors.</li> </ul> <p>13. The platoon continues to improve defensive positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Improved according to the SOP work priorities.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Upgraded as directed by higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-5710.00-0001	Place a Telephone Set, TA-312/PT or TA-1/PT, into Operation	STP 21-II-MQS
04-1910.11-1001	Camouflage Self, Individual Equipment, and Position	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
04-3301.01-0013	Defend a Squad/Platoon Position	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
04-3302.01-0003	Conduct a Reconnaissance	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
061-283-6003	ADJUST INDIRECT FIRE	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-325-4407	EMPLOY HAND GRENADES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4425	EMPLOY AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0852	CLEAR A FIELD OF FIRE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-430-0002	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A SQUAD	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. The enemy (no larger than a squad or platoon size) can assault mounted or dismounted, employ indirect fires, or employ air support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the start point (SP), follows the prescribed route without deviation (unless required otherwise by enemy action or at the direction of higher headquarters [HQ]) and crosses the release point (RP), all as specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) to subordinate leaders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included enough information for subordinate elements to prepare for the mission.</li> <li>b. Gave the WO immediately after being alerted for the mission.</li> <li>c. Included movement instructions if the movement was to be initiated before the operation order (OPORD) was issued.</li> <li>d. Addressed items not covered in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. Specified the time and location to issue the OPORD.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader completes the plan and issues the march order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a statement of the enemy situation, weather, and visibility conditions.</li> <li>b. Identified the route, SP, RP, critical points, and other control points.</li> <li>c. Provided the organization for movement, the order of march, the march rate, and the distance to maintain between units.</li> <li>d. Established security tasks for subordinate elements, to include all-around security and air-guard coverage for the entire element.</li> <li>e. Addressed contingencies for actions on enemy contact.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Plans must include the reaction to an enemy ambush; indirect fire; air attack; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) attack; and sniper fires.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Provided the soldiers with load guides.</li> <li>g. Ensured that subordinate leaders briefed their plans.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element conducts the necessary resupply of water, rations, ammunition, batteries, and special-issue items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the personnel and vehicles for the proper load and equipment and their readiness to move.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Completed a communications check using digital and frequency modulated (FM) radios to report the element's readiness to move.</p> <p>4. The element conducts the road movement.</p> <p>a. Crossed the SP at the designated time.</p> <p>b. Maintained personnel and vehicle intervals and the rate of march specified in the order or the unit's SOP.</p> <p>c. Followed the prescribed route.</p> <p>5. The element maintains local security throughout the movement.</p> <p>a. Maintained all-around observation at all times, to include air guards.</p> <p>b. Oriented as directed, to establish local security.</p> <p>6. The unit reports and reacts to enemy contact.</p> <p>a. Reported and reacted according to directions in the OPORD using the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</p> <p>b. Reported and reacted according to the unit's SOP using the DRS.</p> <p>7. The unit halts.</p> <p>a. Conducted the halt at regular intervals according to the unit's SOP (as the tactical situation permitted) to rest the troops, adjust and redistribute the equipment, and perform foot hygiene.</p> <p>b. Positioned the element to provide all-around security.</p> <p>c. Reported all halts to the next higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the Mobile Subscriber Radiotelephone Terminal (MSRT).</p> <p>d. Positioned the vehicles in a herringbone formation.</p> <p>e. Dismounted personnel to provide local security.</p> <p>f. Checked the condition of the personnel and equipment.</p> <p>g. Coordinated with adjacent unit.</p> <p>h. Reported status to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.</p> <p>8. The leader controls the unit.</p> <p>a. Used visual, messenger, digital, or radio signals for control throughout the movement.</p> <p>b. Reported control measures as directed by the SOP or the order using the DRS.</p> <p>c. Used control measures from the order, modified as needed.</p> <p>9. The element arrives at the RP at the time specified in the order.</p> <p>a. Met the quartering-party guide, if one was designated.</p> <p>b. Passed through the RP without halting.</p> <p>c. Reported the crossing to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
01-7200.75-0100	Conduct Convoy Operations	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
01-7300.75-0500	Plan Convoy Operations	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-4966.90-0010	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	STP 21-II-MQS
04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
04-3303.02-0037	Navigate While Mounted	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
04-3303.02-0039	Plan and Execute a Route Fire Support	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
071-329-1000	IDENTIFY TOPOGRAPHIC SYMBOLS ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1001	IDENTIFY TERRAIN FEATURES ON A MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1003	DETERMINE A MAGNETIC AZIMUTH USING A LENSATIC COMPASS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1008	MEASURE DISTANCE ON A MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1012	ORIENT A MAP TO THE GROUND BY MAP TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1018	DETERMINE DIRECTION WITHOUT A COMPASS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT
301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-721-1359	DRIVE VEHICLE IN A CONVOY	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-721-1363	DRIVE VEHICLE WITH OR WITHOUT TRAILER/SEMITRAILER IN BLACKOUT CONDITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-721-1408	IMPLEMENT DEFENSIVE PROCEDURES WHEN UNDER ENEMY ATTACK OR AMBUSH IN A TRUCK CONVOY	STP 21-1-SMCT
04-3303.02-0040	Navigate with a Compass and Map	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Defend a Battle Position (07-3-4129.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is occupying prepared defensive positions. Intelligence reports indicate that small opposing forces (OPFOR) elements have been sighted in the operational area. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. The OPFOR patrols have increased in sector. The OPFOR attacks the platoon. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The elements in the main defensive positions are not surprised by the OPFOR. The platoon denies enemy penetration of the defensive positions and engages attacking units, forcing enemy withdrawal. Digital units will report and update situational awareness (SA) settings according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) and submit reports using frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The observation posts (OPs) detect and correctly identify the enemy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported enemy activity before the main body was engaged.</li> <li>b. Reported using the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) format.</li> </ul> 2. The unit personnel are alerted and occupy fighting positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Actuated the alert plan according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Occupied the fighting positions within 1 minute of the initial warning.</li> </ul> 3. The unit reports enemy contact. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported enemy contact using the SALUTE format to the company headquarters (HQ) within 1 minute of contact using the FM radio.</li> <li>b. Rendered additional situation reports (SITREPs) as the situation changed.</li> </ul> 4. The OPs return to the unit's position. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used covered and concealed routes back to the defensive position.</li> <li>b. Did not become decisively engaged.</li> </ul> 5. Indirect fire and/or close-air support is requested, if available and applicable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated the call-for-fire procedure within 1 minute of target acquisition.</li> <li>b. Adjusted the fire within 30 seconds of round impact.</li> </ul> 6. The element reacts to the enemy.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Executed the obstacle plan according to the operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO); for example, detonated demolitions, detonated Claymore mines on order, or triggered lines.</p> <p>b. Fired organic weapons as the enemy came into range or as ordered to do so.</p> <p>c. Controlled the distribution and the rate of fire to ensure that a continuous volume of effective fire was placed on the enemy.</p> <p>d. Repositioned the vehicles, squads, and individuals to alternate and supplementary positions using covered and concealed routes, as needed.</p> <p>e. Initiated the final protective fires (FPF), if required.</p> <p>f. Directed counterattacks of reserves to eject enemy penetrations, if required.</p> <p>g. Defended the position until the enemy was repelled or when orders to disengage were received from higher HQ.</p> <p>h. Sustained no friendly casualties due to friendly fire.</p> <p>7. The element reacts to the indirect fire.</p> <p>a. Initiated the alert by any member yelling INCOMING. Also alerted the subordinate elements by other available communications means.</p> <p>b. Sought protection under the overhead cover of the fighting positions. If personnel were in the open, they moved to fighting positions or out of the area.</p> <p>c. Moved the vehicles out of the impact area to alternate positions, if applicable.</p> <p>* 8. The leaders reorganize the element.</p> <p>a. Reestablished the chain of command.</p> <p>b. Submitted the SITREP to the company commander.</p> <p>c. Cross-leveled the unit to fill critical positions caused by casualties.</p> <p>d. Redistributed the ammunition.</p> <p>e. Reoccupied the operations, key weapons, and positions immediately.</p> <p>f. Treated and evacuated casualties as necessary. All first aid common tasks were reviewed.</p> <p>g. Submitted casualty reports.</p> <p>h. Updated the personnel roster.</p> <p>i. Processed the enemy prisoners of war (EPW) and captured materials.</p> <p>* 9. The leaders consolidate the element.</p> <p>a. Repositioned the operations.</p> <p>b. Reestablished communication with the elements.</p> <p>c. Repositioned the personnel.</p> <p>d. Reassigned the sectors of fire to cover all gaps.</p> <p>e. Implemented the sleep and alert plan.</p> <p>10. The unit continues the mission.</p> <p>a. Continued on orders from the company commander.</p> <p>b. Continued as soon as the tactical situation permitted.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

ARTEP 5-053-35-MTP

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to move cross-country mounted or dismounted. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The threat may consist of up to a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element arrives at its destination without being surprised by the opposing forces (OPFOR). The platoon retains its ability to move. Digital units send orders, reports, and text messages as required, according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) using frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader assigns areas of responsibility during the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned all squads to an area of responsibility.</li> <li>b. Directed squad leaders to assign individual areas of responsibility.</li> <li>c. Ensured that there was all-around coverage of the platoon, including air guard.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader designates a route for the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that there was concealment from ground, air, and space observation.</li> <li>b. Ensured that there was cover from the direct fire of known enemy positions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The squads use a wedge formation during the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Formed one or two wedges, based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>b. Closed the wedges during limited visibility so that visibility was maintained between individuals, teams, and squads. The rate of movement was maintained.</li> <li>c. Opened the wedges as obstructions to the movement and to diminish control.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The platoon leader designates the movement technique to be used, based on METT-TC.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated the traveling movement technique when enemy contact was not likely.</li> <li>b. Designated the traveling-overwatch movement technique when enemy contact was possible.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Designated the bounding-overwatch movement technique when enemy contact was likely.</p> <p>5. The platoon performs the traveling movement technique.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained fire teams about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> <li>b. Moved the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> <li>c. Moved in a column formation, staggered laterally, with 50 to 100 meters between vehicles when mounted.</li> <li>d. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</li> </ul> <p>6. The platoon performs the traveling-overwatch movement technique.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Increased the distance between the lead squad and the platoon's main body by 50 to 100 meters.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: (DISMOUNTED) The lead squad uses traveling overwatch and the trailing squads use traveling.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Conducted the movement (mounted) with the lead vehicle 100 to 400 meters in front of the rest of the platoon; other vehicles were 50 to 100 meters apart.</li> <li>c. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</li> </ul> <p>7. The platoon performs the bounding-overwatch movement technique.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted bounds that did not exceed visual overwatch.</li> <li>b. Conducted bounds that stayed within the maximum effective range of overwatching weapons.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The bounding squad moves.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Signaled to the platoon leader that it was beginning its movement.</li> <li>b. Used a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound.</li> <li>c. Employed a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allowed.</li> <li>d. Moved as quickly as possible while maintaining operations security (OPSEC).</li> <li>e. Moved so as not to mask the fires of the overwatching element.</li> <li>f. Established an overwatch position upon completion of its bound, to overwatch the succeeding bound.</li> <li>g. Informed the platoon leader that it had finished its bound and was ready to overwatch.</li> <li>h. Alerted the platoon leader and overwatching element of any enemy detected, obstacles encountered, or danger areas.</li> </ul> <p>9. The overwatch squad provides overwatch.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Occupied a position that allowed observation and fire to cover the bounding squad's movement to its next overwatch position.</li> <li>b. Oriented the weapons on likely enemy positions.</li> <li>c. Maintained continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that could influence the route.</li> <li>d. Suppressed enemy units so that the bounding element was not fixed.</li> <li>e. Alerted the bounding squad and the platoon leader of any enemy that it detected.</li> <li>f. Prepared to bound when the bounding team assumed the overwatch position.</li> </ul> <p>10. The platoon maintains security during the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (the interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility).</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</li> <li>c. Observed sectors of fires so that no enemy could approach the platoon within 35 meters and no aircraft could attack the platoon without warning.</li> </ul> <p>*11. The leaders use control measures during the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned themselves where they could control the movement.</li> <li>b. Positioned key weapons.</li> <li>c. Used visual signals and oral commands to control the movement.</li> </ul> <p>12. The platoon leader controls the platoon's movements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the terrain continuously for potential danger areas.</li> <li>b. Used arm and hand signals once contact was made.</li> <li>c. Used visual and audio signals once contact was made.</li> </ul> <p>13. The platoon leader knows the platoon location at all times.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Expressed the platoon's location as a six-digit coordinate or by using current operational graphics.</li> <li>b. Knew the location of all the platoon elements and the leading, flanking, and trailing company elements, and was accurate to plus or minus 100 meters.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Prepare Personnel for Deployment (12-1-0409.05-T01A)  
 (TC 12-16) (AR 220-10) (AR 600-38)  
 (AR 600-8) (AR 600-8-14) (AR 600-8-2)  
 (AR 600-8-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is tasked to deploy to a theater of operations. It is assigned the responsibility to process personnel for overseas movement. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Battalion soldiers are administratively prepared for deployment within the time frame specified in the operation order (OPORD) or letter of instruction (LOI).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) plans the preparation for oversea movement (POM).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established processing requirements.</li> <li>b. Established support requirements.</li> <li>c. Published the POM plan.</li> <li>d. Briefed the command group.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the POM with brigade S1.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The S1 or Personnel and Administration Center (PAC) supervisor coordinates POM requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel), for personnel service company (PSC) support.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) for legal support.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with medical department activity (MEDDAC) and dental activity (DENTAC) for medical and dental support.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the provost marshal (PM) for privately owned vehicle (POV) storage.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The S1 section participates in the POM process.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted liaison with the POM site commander.</li> <li>b. Briefed soldiers on POM procedures.</li> <li>c. Issued the POM checklist.</li> <li>d. Reviewed family-care plans.</li> <li>e. Reviewed pay elections.</li> <li>f. Assisted soldiers in completing postal forms.</li> <li>g. Reviewed the POM checklist for completeness.</li> <li>h. Identified nonparticipants and nondeployable soldiers.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The S1 or PAC supervisor conducts briefings for family members.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
a. Coordinated installation support. b. Established briefing site and schedules. c. Published family-support packet. d. Monitored family-support briefings.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Coordinate the Integration of Air Defense for Mobility and Countermobility Operations (05-1-0200)  
(FM 71-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer battalion is supporting a maneuver brigade during a tactical operation where the enemy is expected to employ rotary and fixed-wing assets against breaching/gap-crossing sites. Air-defense assets are available to the maneuver brigade and the engineer battalion. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer battalion accomplishes its mobility/countermobility missions under enemy air threat and attack. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The engineer battalion commander and the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) develop active and passive air-defense plans for mobility and countermobility operations and coordinate them with the brigade's air-defense artillery (ADA) liaison office. * 2. The engineer battalion staff and leaders disseminate enemy air-defense approaches, air-defense status, and weapons-control status to subordinate units. 3. The engineer battalion employs passive measures. 4. The elements of the engineer battalion cover breach sites, gap-crossing sites, and Class IV and V points with air-defense warning. 5. The engineer battalion and attached air-defense elements, if provided, react to the RED air-defense warning. 6. The engineer battalion task force (TF) elements react to enemy air attacks. 7. The engineer battalion TF maintains control of active air-defense measures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-3303.03-0013	Prepare Battalion Combat Orders	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
03-8952.00-9050	Employ Directed Energy and Laser Protective Measures	STP 21-II-MQS
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates	STP 21-I-MQS STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP BREACHER
071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2027	LOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2028	UNLOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3003	LAY AN M60 MACHINE GUN USING FIELD EXPEDIENTS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3025	MAINTAIN AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3027	LOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3028	UNLOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3031	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-313-3455	Set Headspace and Timing on a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
071-326-0502	MOVE UNDER DIRECT FIRE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0510	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE WHILE DISMOUNTED	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0513	SELECT TEMPORARY FIGHTING POSITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT
441-091-1040	VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT	STP 21-24-SMCT
441-091-3001	DIRECT UNIT AIR DEFENSE	STP 21-24-SMCT
S4-9050.00-0001	Identify United States and Threat Space Systems Capabilities and Concepts	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**TASK:** Disrupt Construction of Vehicle Fighting Positions (5-OPFOR-0020)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate the enemy is constructing vehicle fighting positions within its defensive area. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt the enemy's efforts to establish vehicle fighting positions. 1. Locates the defensive area. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the defensive area with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts casualties on the unit. 5. Destroys vehicles. 6. Disrupts the unit's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the unit's allotted time).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS) (05-2-0100)  
(FM 5-71-2) (FM 3-34.2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) that is conducting offensive or defensive tactical operations. Integration of FS into breaching operations and the obstacle plan is necessary. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company will develop effective indirect-fire plans to maximize suppression or obscuration for the breach forces and to cover tactical obstacles. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander and the executive officer (XO) prepare for offensive and defensive tactical operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Participated in developing a TF course of action (COA).</li> <li>b. Prepared a supporting scheme of engineer operations (SOEO).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander and the XO, in coordination with the fire support officer (FSO), prepare for offensive operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a fire support plan that supported the SOEO.</li> <li>b. Ascertained the priority for the artillery support for the breach and assault forces.</li> <li>c. Established adequate fire-control measures to support the breaching operation.</li> <li>d. Coordinated for screening or obscuration smoke and suppressive-artillery fires.</li> <li>e. Identified the location of counterfire radar zones.</li> <li>f. Developed a plan for the employment of the scatterable mines (SCATMINES), to include a time analysis of triggers, ensuring that there was sufficient time to fire the SCATMINE to achieve the planned obstacle effect.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The commander and the XO, in coordination with the FSO, prepare for defensive operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a fire support plan that supported the SOEO.</li> <li>b. Detailed adequate plans to support and reinforce the desired obstacle effect, ensuring that all obstacles were covered by direct- and indirect-fire plans.</li> <li>c. Established adequate fire control measures, ensuring that priority obstacles were covered to accomplish the obstacle intent.</li> <li>d. Determined the employment of the area-denial artillery munition (ADAM) and the remote antiarmor munition (RAAM) SCATMINES.</li> <li>e. Planned the synchronization and the integration of FS for the reserve targets.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A) (FM 3-19)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of (or information on) radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. Digital units have performed functionality checks and all digital systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander and operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company's organic reconnaissance element. The plan is issued with two-thirds planning time remaining for the element. The plan must be detailed and feasible for the element to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander supervises the preparation and execution. Digital units send and receive reports, overlay graphics, and text messaging information through frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander receives and analyses the mission and identifies all unit tasks.</li> <li>* 2. The commander issues a warning order as soon as possible to subordinate leaders.</li> <li>* 3. The commander and the operations section makes a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned reconnaissance or survey techniques, locations, turn-back dose rates (radiological missions), decontamination after the reconnaissance/survey, fire support, reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for intelligence information, air or indirect fire support, and medical support and coordinated its plan with units in the area of operations if necessary.</li> <li>c. Drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); ammunition; MOPP gear; Classes II and VII support; and maintenance/recovery/Class IX support for the platoon.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The commander orders units to start movement, if necessary.</li> <li>* 5. The commander reconnoiters the operations area and makes a map reconnaissance as a minimum.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 6. The commander completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon.</p> <p>* 7. The commander supervises preparations of the reconnaissance/survey if the location of operations permits. Communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support.</p> <p>8. The company conducts a tactical road march or executes traveling movement to the reconnaissance/survey site. The reconnaissance or survey element--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executed a mounted movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation and or mission required.</li> <li>b. Detected and marked the contaminated area, ensuring that the marking signs were facing toward friendly areas. Detected uncontaminated areas and routes. Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and physical capacity to hold a site if required to perform reconnaissance for decontamination sites as a mission.</li> <li>c. Determined the limits of the contaminated area. Detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission.</li> </ul> <p>9. The headquarters (HQ), if prescribed by the mission, assists the reconnaissance/survey units' recovery operations.</p> <p>*10. The commander or operations officer, if prescribed by the mission, debriefs returning reconnaissance/survey units and forwards acquired information to higher HQ in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format, if required.</p> <p>11. The radiological company leaders record, collate, and submit individual and unit radiation-exposure-status (RES) readings to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation (03-2-C312.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is contaminated with a persistent chemical agent during combat operations. Time is available to conduct reconstitution, to include a thorough decontamination. A supporting smoke/decontamination (or decontamination) platoon is tasked to conduct the thorough decontamination mission. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The smoke/decontamination platoon sets up the detailed equipment decontamination site and removes all contamination from the equipment and vehicles. The contaminated unit sets up the detailed troop decontamination (with technical advice from the decontamination platoon) and processes all personnel. The responsible units properly close the site and report the location to higher headquarters (HQ).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The contaminated unit's leader determines the extent of the contamination and establishes decontamination priorities.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received input from subordinate leaders and/or staff.</li> <li>b. Established priorities of decontamination.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher HQ. The request should, as a minimum, include the--                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designation of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>b. Location of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>c. Frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>d. Time the unit became contaminated.</li> <li>e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that were contaminated.</li> <li>f. Type of contamination.</li> <li>g. Earliest possible time the unit could move or begin decontamination.</li> <li>h. Special requirements (patient decontamination station, recovery assets, unit decontamination team, and so forth).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The contaminated unit's higher HQ chemical staff--                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a warning order to the supporting chemical unit.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the movement of the contaminated unit to the linkup point and the decontamination site.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting elements (medical, engineer, air defense, military police, smoke support, and so forth).</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: The contaminated unit is responsible for providing security for the decontamination site. Security support must be coordinated before arriving at the linkup point.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. The contaminated unit, decontamination platoon, and other supporting elements arrive at the linkup point.</li> <li>5. The decontamination unit's leader briefs the site layout and the procedures.</li> <li>6. The contaminated unit conducts predecontamination site or staging area activities.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated the contaminated vehicles and equipment from the uncontaminated ones, if possible.</li> <li>b. Dismounted the vehicles (except the drivers), ensuring that they--                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Removed all equipment from the tops of the vehicles.</li> <li>(2) Did not reenter the vehicles once they were exited (to prevent further contamination of the interior of the vehicles).</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Prepared vehicles for detailed equipment decontamination.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Used pioneer tools to remove all heavy mud and debris from the vehicle.</li> <li>(2) Removed and disposed of seat covers, canvas items, camouflage netting, and other materials which could absorb chemical contaminants.</li> <li>(3) Removed and disposed of nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) covers as contaminated waste.</li> </ol> </li> <li>d. Moved contaminated personnel, vehicles, and equipment to the detailed troop and equipment decontamination lines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. The designated personnel set up and maintain communications within the decontamination site and coordinate with the supported unit for additional communications support.</li> <li>* 8. The decontamination unit sets up detailed equipment decontamination site stations.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Station 1. Initial wash.</li> <li>b. Station 2. Decontamination solution #2 (DS2) application.</li> <li>c. Station 3. Wait/interior decontamination.</li> <li>d. Station 4. Rinse.</li> <li>e. Station 5. Check.</li> </ol> </li> <li>9. The contaminated unit sets up detailed troop decontamination site stations.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Station 1. Individual gear decontamination.</li> <li>b. Station 2. Overboot and hood decontamination.</li> <li>c. Station 3. Overgarment removal.</li> <li>d. Station 4. Overboot and glove removal.</li> <li>e. Station 5. Monitor.</li> <li>f. Station 6. Mask removal.</li> <li>g. Station 7. Mask decontamination point.</li> <li>h. Station 8. Reissue point.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>NOTE: The decontamination unit's leader must establish a route to move vehicle operators from Station 3 of the detailed equipment decontamination site to the detailed troop decontamination site.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10. The decontamination unit's leader (in conjunction with the leader or control cell from the contaminated unit) supervises an overall thorough decontamination site operation.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>11. The decontamination unit processes vehicles and equipment through the detailed equipment decontamination stations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the contaminated unit provided guides to control vehicle traffic through the site.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the drivers moved the vehicles and equipment through the stations.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the assistant drivers who had processed through the detailed troop decontamination stations replaced the primary drivers at Station 3, once interior decontamination was completed.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the primary drivers proceeded to the detailed troop decontamination site to process through the stations.</li> <li>e. Ensured that the soldiers from the detailed troop decontamination site and the vehicles and equipment from the detailed equipment decontamination site reunited and moved to the reconstitution area.</li> </ol> <p>12. The contaminated unit processes personnel through the detailed troop decontamination stations.</p> <p>13. The decontamination unit's soldiers close the detailed equipment decontamination site.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Station 1. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station (power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE], hoses, nozzles, and so forth).</li> <li>(2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary.</li> <li>(3) Drained water from the blivets or fabric tanks.</li> <li>(4) Loaded equipment on the vehicles.</li> <li>(5) Spread a can of super tropical bleach (STB) in each sump and covered the sumps.</li> <li>(6) Marked the sumps.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Station 2 (for chemical/biological only). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Applied DS2 to PDDE, mops, handles, decontamination apparatus, and containers.</li> <li>(2) Discarded mop heads, brushes, and the station sign in the Station 4 sump and then pulled the PDDE forward and washed the entire application point.</li> <li>(3) Loaded unused decontaminants on the vehicles.</li> <li>(4) Marked the area and moved all reusable equipment from Station 2 to Station 3.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Station 3. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Inspected unused supplies for contamination; if uncontaminated, loaded on the vehicles.</li> <li>(2) Threw contaminated supplies in the Station 4 sump.</li> </ol> </li> <li>d. Station 4. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station (PDDE, hoses, nozzles, and so forth).</li> <li>(2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary.</li> <li>(3) Drained the water from the blivets or fabric tanks.</li> <li>(4) Loaded equipment on the vehicles.</li> <li>(5) Spread a can of STB in each sump and covered the sumps (after the residue from Station 5 was placed in the sump).</li> <li>(6) Marked the sumps.</li> </ol> </li> <li>e. Station 5.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station.                      (2) Loaded all the reusable equipment on the vehicles.                      (3) Discarded unusable items in the Station 4 sump.</p> <p>14. The decontamination unit moves to the troop decontamination site for decontamination.</p> <p>15. The station operators clean up the detailed troop decontamination site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed all the used supplies from Station 7 in the Station 7 sump.</li> <li>b. Moved all usable equipment and supplies from all stations to Station 1.</li> <li>c. Discarded unusable supplies from Stations 5, 4, and 3 in the sump at Station 1.</li> <li>d. Decontaminated all supplies and equipment collected at Station 1.</li> <li>e. Emptied and rinsed the decontaminant containers from Station 1 in the sump at that station.</li> <li>f. Marked the area.</li> <li>g. Removed overgarments utilizing the MOPP-gear exchange technique.</li> <li>h. Disposed of used overgarments in the Station 1 sump.</li> <li>i. Moved all the equipment used to fill the sump upwind of the decontamination area.</li> <li>j. Decontaminated rubber gloves and moved all equipment from Station 1 upwind of the decontamination area. Kept this equipment separate from the equipment used to fill the sump.</li> <li>k. Spread a can of STB in each sump and covered the sumps.</li> <li>l. Marked the sumps.</li> <li>m. Submitted an NBC 4 report to higher HQ defining the areas of contamination resulting from the decontamination operation.</li> </ul> <p>*16. The contaminated unit conducts reconstitution activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with supported battalions for assessment and recovery teams.</li> <li>b. Coordinated and requested maintenance support.</li> <li>c. Coordinated and requested medical support.</li> <li>d. Coordinated and established logistical support for resupply activities.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-2001	USE M256 OR M256A1 CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3010	SUPERVISE EMPLOYMENT OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, OR CHEMICAL MARKERS	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)

(FM 3-100)  
(FM 3-4)

(FM 3-11)

(FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission. Digital units send and receive reports through frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The unit leader checks accountability and serviceability of NBC-defense equipment.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that NBC-detection equipment was issued to trained operators.</li> <li>b. Ensured that NBC-detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes.</li> <li>c. Identified equipment shortages.</li> <li>d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The unit assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher HQ or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that soldiers could mask and hood within 15 seconds.</li> <li>b. Ensured that soldiers could assume MOPP 4 within 8 minutes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Unit soldiers take actions to protect themselves against an NBC attack.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up and use collective protective shelters (if available).</li> <li>b. Prepared protective shelters, such as foxholes with overhead cover.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The unit leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received and analyzed the enemy NBC threat capability. Took the following into consideration:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was the unit targeted or could it be targeted?</li> <li>(2) Did the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons?</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) When or where could the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons? b. Collected and analyzed weather data. Took the following into consideration: (1) Was it day or night? (2) What were the current weather conditions (see chemical downwind message [CDM] or weather report)? (3) What were the weather conditions two, four, and six hours in the future (see CDM or weather report)? c. Analyzed the unit's status and mission. Took the following into consideration: (1) What was the mission? (2) What was the work rate? (3) How long did the work take? (4) What were the training and physical levels of the unit? (5) How long did it take to warn all the soldiers of an NBC attack?		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit personnel assume mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes and complete preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The unit protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed MOPP 4 within 8 minutes after notification.</li> <li>b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms and left wrists and to either their right or left ankles and to the vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted MOPP field-sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of position.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions or shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters.</li> <li>b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover consisting of at least a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.</p> <p>* 4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP 4.</li> <li>b. Ensured that individual and platoon fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level as appropriate.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

**TASK:** Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP 4, and use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators for a chemical or biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Put on their protective masks within 9 seconds.</li> <li>b. Gave the alarm (vocal or nonvocal).</li> <li>c. Assumed MOPP 4 as soon as possible.</li> <li>d. Sought additional shelter, if available.</li> <li>e. Administered a nerve-agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve-agent poisoning (if applicable).</li> <li>f. Administered nerve-agent antidotes to selves (if applicable).</li> <li>g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed.</li> </ul> <p>2. The soldiers take additional protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies.</li> <li>b. Monitored the area by testing with detector kits.</li> <li>c. Used prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas.</li> </ul> <p>3. The soldiers conduct immediate decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted skin decontamination.</li> <li>b. Conducted wipe down of personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits.</li> <li>c. Conducted operator spray-down of equipment.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that casualties were provided with medical care.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1030	ADMINISTER NERVE AGENT ANTIDOTE TO SELF (SELF-AID)	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a strike-warning message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. Digital units send and receive orders and reports via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike-warning message.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Authenticated the call.</li> <li>b. Acknowledged the warning by return message.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Warned subordinate and affected units.</li> <li>b. Ensured that subordinates executed the actions as directed.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding.</li> <li>b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment.</li> <li>c. Tied down essential antennas.</li> <li>d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads.</li> <li>e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Zeroed dosimeters.</li> <li>g. Digital units ensured that the systems were prepared according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).</li> <li>h. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. Digital units send reports, warnings, and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit's leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order.  2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. a. Placed vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit's SOP or other guidance. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects. h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available). i. Used field-expedient shelters.  3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continued periodic monitoring. b. Reported all dose-rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters.		



<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leaders prepare for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed individuals who may be exposed to radioactive dust particles to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves.</li> <li>b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn back the dose/turn back the dose rate).</li> <li>c. Ensured that radiac-equipment operators checked the instruments.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit prepares for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, use sandbags on the vehicle's floor).</li> <li>b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>c. Started continuous monitoring.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided stirring up dust.</li> <li>b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between the vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should be buttoned up).</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties (if applicable).</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Evacuated casualties.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-50)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit encounters friendly or enemy smoke while conducting operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. Digital units report locations, and send and receive messages through frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke.</li> <li>b. Used threat smoke to conceal its own movements.</li> <li>c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat's use of smoke.</li> <li>d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The unit employs organic smoke-grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit.</li> <li>b. Determined the wind direction and speed.</li> <li>c. Determined where to release smoke and where it would travel.</li> <li>d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations.</li> <li>e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the smoke covered a larger area than the unit's position.</li> <li>g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined what available target acquisition systems were effective in the smoke and used them.</li> <li>b. Requested target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests a resupply of smoke munitions when required.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation. Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves.</li> <li>b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL); food; and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles.</li> <li>c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout.</li> <li>d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment.</li> </ul> <p>2. The designated personnel monitor fallout.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments.</li> <li>b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible.</li> <li>c. Calculated the optimum time of exit.</li> <li>d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) using secure means when possible.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure.</li> <li>b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Without warning--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Closed eyes immediately.</li> <li>(2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with head toward blast, if possible (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle).</li> <li>(3) Kept head and face down and helmet on.</li> <li>(4) Remained prone until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. With warning--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the best available shelter (fighting positions or inside shelters).</li> <li>(2) Moved to the shelter.</li> <li>(3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation.</li> <li>(4) Kept clothing loosely fitted with headgear on at all times.</li> <li>(5) Protected eyes and minimized exposed skin areas.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> * 2. The leaders reorganize the unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reestablished the chain of command.</li> <li>b. Reestablished communications.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 1 report to the higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>d. Treated casualties.</li> <li>e. Reported casualties.</li> <li>f. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation.</li> <li>h. Implemented continuous monitoring.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ. j. Initiated an area-damage-control plan as required. k. Extinguished all fires before they spread out of control.  * 3. The leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational.  4. The soldiers right overturned vehicles. a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids. b. Performed operator's maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use.  5. The soldiers improve cover (if applicable). a. Chose dense covering material. b. Covered in depth. c. Provided strong support. d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3005	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 1 REPORTS	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1007	GIVE FIRST AID FOR BURNS	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1017	PUT ON A TOURNIQUET	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1025	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN ABDOMINAL WOUND	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1033	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN HEAD WOUND	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1034	SPLINT A SUSPECTED FRACTURE	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the unit to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, unit decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination unit is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP-gear exchange (utilizing the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP 4. Digital units can send and receive reports and orders through frequency modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The contaminated unit's leader determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received input from staff or subordinate leaders.</li> <li>b. Established priorities of decontamination.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request should, as a minimum, include the--                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designation of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>b. Location of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>c. Frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>d. Time the unit became contaminated.</li> <li>e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that are contaminated.</li> <li>f. Type of contamination.</li> <li>g. Special requirements (patient decontamination station, recovery assets, unit decontamination team, and so forth).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The contaminated unit coordinates with higher HQ.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtain necessary support.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (company supply section, company/battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, decontamination squad/platoon, and so forth).</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting elements.</li> <li>d. Requested replacement MOPP gear.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP-gear exchange.</li> </ul> <p>4. The contaminated unit's leader and NBC specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected provides the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Adequate overhead concealment.</li> <li>b. Good drainage.</li> <li>c. Easy access and exit (but off the main routes).</li> <li>d. Proximity to a water source large enough to support the vehicle washdown.</li> <li>e. Area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both vehicle-washdown and MOPP-gear-exchange sites).</li> </ul> <p>5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (company/battalion PDDE crew or decontamination unit).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested operational decontamination support.</li> <li>b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination.</li> <li>c. Established communications with the decontamination unit.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the decontamination unit knew the locations of the linkup and selected decontamination sites.</li> </ul> <p>6. The contaminated unit and supporting units move to the decontamination site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated.</li> <li>b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site.</li> </ul> <p>7. The units prepare for operational decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up the decontamination site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The supporting decontamination unit crew set up the vehicle-washdown site.</li> <li>(2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP-gear-exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle-washdown site.</li> <li>(3) The remainder of the unit prepared its equipment for decontamination.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior.</li> <li>(2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles. The contaminated unit provided personnel to do this if the crews did not dismount.</li> <li>(3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper interval).</li> <li>(b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up (all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered).</li> </ul> </li> <li>(4) Moved vehicles, with operators, to the vehicle-washdown site.</li> <li>(5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP-gear-exchange site.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination unit supervises the operation of the vehicle-washdown site, ensuring that the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Vehicle operators maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Vehicles were washed properly.</p> <p>(1) Started at the top and worked down.</p> <p>(2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle.</p> <p>(3) Monitored water consumption.</p> <p>c. Vehicles moved to the assembly area after vehicle washdown.</p> <p>d. Vehicle operators moved to the MOPP-gear-exchange site and conducted MOPP-gear exchange.</p> <p>9. The contaminated unit conducts MOPP-gear exchange.</p> <p>a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with super tropical bleach [STB] dry mix).</p> <p>b. Briefed the MOPP-gear-exchange participants on the procedures to be followed.</p> <p>c. Placed decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (plastics, poncho, or other similar material).</p> <p>d. Exchanged the MOPP gear using the buddy system.</p> <p>e. Moved soldiers to the assembly area after completing the MOPP-gear exchange.</p> <p>NOTES:</p> <p>1. Ensured that the supporting units had the opportunity to use the MOPP-gear-exchange site before proceeding.</p> <p>2. The supporting decontamination unit cleaned and marked the site and reported the area of contamination (using NBC 4 report) to higher HQ.</p> <p>10. Unit leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completion of the operational decontamination.</p> <p>11. The contaminated unit's leader reports to higher HQ.</p> <p>a. Reported the completion and location of the decontamination site (vehicle-washdown and the MOPP-gear-exchange sites).</p> <p>b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazard was detected.</p> <p>c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level as required (after obtaining approval from higher HQ).</p> <p>12. The contaminated unit continues the mission.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1023	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN CHANGING MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties. Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 5 (Chemical) report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route.</li> <li>b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission.</li> <li>c. Obtained a route clearance and approval.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit prepares to cross the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area.</li> <li>b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the route of march or had strip maps.</li> <li>c. Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement).</li> <li>d. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>e. Attached M9 detector paper to the soldiers and the vehicles to provide warning of contamination.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible.</li> <li>c. Crossed the area as quickly and as carefully as possible.</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit exits the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties (if applicable).</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-2004	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 4 REPORTS	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3004	SUPERVISE THE CROSSING OF A CONTAMINATED AREA	STP 21-24-SMCT
04-3303.01-0034	Navigate Using a Map and Compass	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0003	Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)	STP 21-II-MQS
071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-1-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Prepare an Obstacle Plan (05-2-0001)  
(FM 90-7) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-100)  
(FM 5-102) (FM 5-71-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a task force (TF), and guidance has been received from the TF commander. The commander has completed an engineer estimate and has developed the initial engineer plan to support the operation. The TF commander's guidance identifies directed obstacles; responsibilities; obstacle belts; obstacle-restricted areas; scatterable-mine (SCATMINE) employment authority; and concept, priorities, and special instructions. Digital units have performed functionality checks of the digital systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The obstacle plan supports the TF commander's scheme of maneuver. It graphically shows the TF commander's intent for obstacle groups in the TF sector. The overlay must be completed and submitted to the TF by the most expedient means available no later than the time specified in the fragmentary order (FRAGO) or the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital systems to update the situational awareness (SA) and the common operating picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element leader obtains and considers the available information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received constraints and restraints from higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>b. Determined the TF's course of action (COA).</li> <li>c. Developed the initial analysis as part of the engineer-estimate process.</li> <li>d. Determined the specified tasks from the higher unit's OPORD.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The company commander, assisted by the HQ staff, develops an initial plan using the Maneuver Control System (MCS) and the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included the obstacles directed by higher HQ.</li> <li>b. Included the obstacles directed by the TF commander.</li> <li>c. Included the obstacle groups that achieved the desired effect on the enemy.</li> <li>d. Included the obstacle-restricted areas.</li> <li>e. Included the SCATMINE employment concept (identified by the type of SCATMINE system).</li> <li>f. Integrated the Hornet and the Raptor into the defensive plan, which is used to deny the enemy use of an area, for overwatching conventional minefields, on high-speed avenues of approach, and in other ways as needed.</li> <li>g. Included the priority of the distribution of assets: Class IV; Class V (engineer); other obstacle assets under brigade or engineer company control, to include units from higher echelons; and the SCATMINE allocation by sortie for the Gator and the air Volcano, the number of rounds for area-denial artillery munitions (ADAM)/remote antiarmor mine system (RAAMS), the number of mines/reloads for the Flipper and Volcano, and the number of dispensers for Modular Pack Mine System (MOPMS).</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Included the execution authority and special instructions for reserved demolitions and/or obstacles.</p> <p>i. Included the lanes and routes key to the brigade's maneuver element or logistics plan and instructions for their closure.</p> <p>NOTE: The initial plan contains tentative information. While directive in nature, the specifics of the plan are modified based on the tactical plans of the subordinate maneuver elements.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader integrates the initial obstacle plan into the tactical plan.</p> <p>a. Directed only those items key to the maneuver plan.</p> <p>b. Allowed maximum flexibility for subordinate maneuver commanders to determine the type and location of obstacles, consistent with the TF commander's scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>c. Provided the plan to the maneuver commander and ensured that it was incorporated into the engineer annex.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader consolidates subordinate-unit obstacle plans into the final (actual) obstacle plan, ensuring that the obstacle types and locations are coordinated with the maneuver and fire-support (FS) plans.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader ensures that the final obstacle plan is complete.</p> <p>a. Contained the location, type, and special characteristics of each obstacle (including directed obstacles) and all scatterable minefields with self-destruct times, except for the MOPMS minefields.</p> <p>b. Contained a timetable and estimated completion time for obstacles not yet completed.</p> <p>c. Included specific orders stating under what conditions and by whose authority reserve obstacles were to be executed.</p> <p>d. Illustrated the exact location of opened routes and lanes according to the tactical and logistical plan, including those specified by higher HQ.</p> <p>e. Included the changes in obstacle groups and other such adjustments that had been coordinated with subordinate elements.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** Conduct Minefield-Clearing Operations (05-2-0111)  
(FM 20-32) (FM 5-34) (STANAG 2036 (ENGR))

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company is directed to clear a minefield. The area is secure and enemy fire is unlikely. The company's assigned equipment is in serviceable condition and has sufficient demolitions to accomplish the mission. Digital systems are functional and providing current situational awareness (SA) data. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company removes or destroys all mines. The company sustains no friendly casualties to mines. Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander verifies critical data from the Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355, if available.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the minefield location.</li> <li>b. Confirmed the number and the type of mines (antitank [AT] or antipersonnel [AP]).</li> <li>c. Verified the minefield boundaries.</li> <li>d. Verified the number of rows and the location of landmarks.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The company commander organizes the company for clearance operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established a marking party for minefield boundaries, if not previously marked.</li> <li>b. Designated personnel to operate control points at the rear of the minefield.</li> <li>c. Designated personnel to operate a mine dump, if friendly mines were to be recovered.</li> <li>d. Established mine-sweep teams.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The company commander directs the locating and marking of all mines and lanes.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned starting points and areas to clear to a minimum width of 25 meters and the full depth of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Ensured that mines were marked as soon as identified.</li> <li>c. Ensured that mine detector operators were at least 8 meters apart at all times, swept a 2-meter path, and were relieved every 20 minutes.</li> <li>d. Deployed the teams in echelon formation.</li> <li>e. Ensured the lanes were marked as the sweep teams proceeded down them.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The company disarms and recovers or detonates all mines.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disarmed and recovered only United States (US) mines without antihandling devices (AHDs) and that have remained in friendly control.</li> <li>b. Detonated in place all foreign mines, US mines with AHDs, booby traps, and mines that have been in control of enemy forces.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Located and marked the mines.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(2) Placed a 1-pound block of explosives primed with detonating cord directly next to the mine.</li> <li>(3) Used a line main or ring main to detonate the emplaced charges, either collectively or individually.</li> <li>(4) Ensured that detonation did not take place until all personnel exited the minefield to a safe distance or area.</li> <li>c. Requested explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel, if foreign mines required recovery by hand.</li> </ul> <p>5. The company proofs the minefield with electronic detectors, mine rollers, or other expedient methods to ensure that all mines are recovered or destroyed.</p> <p>6. The company commander and all subordinate leaders ensure that unit members follow safety considerations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the unit members left metal objects outside the minefield when the use of magnetically influenced fuzes was known or suspected.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the sweep-team members wore protective clothing, such as a helmet and a flak vest.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the members did not run in the minefield.</li> <li>d. Advised the members to assume that all mines were equipped with AHDs.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The company commander ensures that all required reports are sent to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the status of progress reports was sent according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Ensured that the completion report was sent according to the unit's SOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations using Persistent and Nonpersistent Chemical Weapons (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**TASK:** Defend Minefield (5-OPFOR-0023)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a minesweeping operation. The opposing forces (OPFOR) have a minefield placed in the enemy's path. The minefield is under constant observation and fire.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR defends a minefield against an enemy element conducting a minesweeping operation. 1. Prevents the unit from detecting the obstacle. 2. Disrupts the minesweeping operations. 3. Prevents the unit from conducting the minefield sweeping operation, prevents the unit from moving all personnel through the breach, or delays the completion of the minefield sweeping operation for more than 45 minutes.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Conduct Breaching Operations (05-2-0114)  
(FM 3-34.2) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 20-32)  
(FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company is performing continuous tactical operations in darkness and daylight under all weather conditions. The engineer company is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) with an established command or support relationship. The TF has the mission of conducting an offensive operation and has designated support, breach, and assault forces. The TF is conducting both in-stride and deliberate breaching operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company creates lanes through obstacles where directed by the TF commander to maintain the momentum of the attack. Friendly forces sustain no casualties while using the marked lanes. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander conducts troop-leading procedures with an emphasis on preparing for breaching operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified personnel and equipment needed, and task-organized platoons to reduce obstacles in support of the attack.</li> <li>b. Rehearsed the mission with platoon leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that each element understood its mission.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the platoon's equipment was checked for serviceability and had everything specified in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP), including those items required for the specific mission.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: An engineer company may require augmentation with additional equipment, such as the Grizzly and/or Wolverine and personnel (up to two additional platoons) to support the deliberate attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Identified engineer-required Class V munitions and requested the munitions through the maneuver unit if applicable, based on the command or support relationship.</li> <li>f. Task-organized the company and equipment to support the mission; identifying the engineer support needed for the breach, support, and assault force; with priority to the breach force.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with the maneuver commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) to place the unit in the TF formation.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The engineer company leadership must be very familiar with the maneuver unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).</p> <p>2. The company conducts actions in the assembly area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed precombat checks with a special emphasis on reduction assets.</li> <li>b. Linked up with the supported units, if applicable.</li> <li>c. Conducted detailed rehearsals with the supported units, if applicable.</li> </ul> <p>3. The company moves with the maneuver unit to the last covered and concealed location before the obstacle.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The company takes action as directed by the maneuver commander according to the maneuver unit's TSOP.</p> <p>5. The company commander positions subordinate elements well forward and integrates into the breach- and assault-force combat formations. The commander anticipates locations and/or events where engineer support is essential.</p> <p>6. The company commander anticipates obstacle locations based on the engineer battlefield assessment.</p> <p>7. The company supports the breaching operation.</p> <p>8. The company commander directs the engineer platoons to conduct an enemy-obstacle reconnaissance.</p> <p>9. The company commander advises the maneuver commander on the best location to bypass or reduce the obstacle.</p> <p>10. The company supports the breach and assault forces with priority to the breach force. The company may provide limited support to allow the support force to move into an overwatch position.</p> <p>11. The company commander directs the engineer platoon supporting the breach force to reduce the tactical obstacles along the attack axis. The platoon is prepared to support both mounted and dismounted attacks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a minimum of one lane per assaulting company or two lanes per TF.</li> <li>b. Created the lane in 10 minutes or less when personnel and equipment were exposed to direct and/or observed indirect fire.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The above 10 minutes refers to the time allowed to reduce the obstacle or to create the lane. It is the maximum time permitted for personnel and equipment to remain exposed in front of the obstacle. When covert breaching operations are conducted, or at a location where the unit is not under enemy fire, no time standard is established.</p> <p>12. The company commander retains the ability to reinforce or supplement the efforts of the forward platoons.</p> <p>13. The engineer platoon marks the lane according to the unit's TSOP.</p> <p>14. The engineer platoon leader reports to higher headquarters (HQ) on the location of the lane according to the unit's TSOP.</p> <p>15. The company prepares to continue the mission.</p> <p>16. The company commander reports the location of the lane and/or obstacle to higher HQ according to the unit's TSOP.</p> <p>17. The company conducts a lane or obstacle hand-off.</p> <p>18. The company commander directs an engineer platoon or squad to remain at the lane or obstacle to hand it over to the follow-on engineer unit. The lane or obstacle is expediently marked, and the marking method is explained to the follow-on engineer unit.</p> <p>19. The company supports the maneuver unit's assault on the objective.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.



**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations using Persistent and Nonpersistent Chemical Weapons (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**TASK:** Defend Minefield (5-OPFOR-0023)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a minesweeping operation. The opposing forces (OPFOR) have a minefield placed in the enemy's path. The minefield is under constant observation and fire.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR defends a minefield against an enemy element conducting a minesweeping operation. 1. Prevents the unit from detecting the obstacle. 2. Disrupts the minesweeping operations. 3. Prevents the unit from conducting the minefield sweeping operation, prevents the unit from moving all personnel through the breach, or delays the completion of the minefield sweeping operation for more than 45 minutes.

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301)  
 (FM 20-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is tactically deployed. The enemy has air- and ground-surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Digital units have performed functionality checks of their digital systems and they are operational. Camouflage resources are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small-arms range. The element's location or identity cannot be determined through aerial photographs or ground surveillance radar (GSR). Digital units update their position through either frequency modulated (FM) or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader selects concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the vehicle operators used concealed routes whenever possible, following and paralleling hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the vehicle's track signature continued past the parked location to another logical spot.</li> </ul> <p>2. The operators maneuver vehicles along concealed routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used existing tracks.</li> <li>b. Avoided movement near terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that may have been used as a reference point by the enemy's ground or aerial fires.</li> <li>c. Obliterated vehicle tracks where they turned, concealing vehicle positions.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element conceals vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned the vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows.</li> <li>b. Positioned the vehicles and equipment so that their shape blended with the surroundings.</li> <li>c. Used natural materials to distort and combine with the shape or the shadow of the vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>d. Blended natural materials with the surrounding area.</li> <li>e. Replaced cut vegetation when it withered or changed color.</li> <li>f. Used nets to create shadows.</li> <li>g. Used camouflage-screening systems to enhance natural materials.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>h. Ensured that heat sources (generators, engines, and mess areas) were kept under screening systems, even when using natural concealment.</li> <li>i. Covered shiny objects such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies.</li> <li>j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain) when the situation permitted.</li> <li>k. Concealed the vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain.</li> <li>l. Disguised the vehicles and equipment to change their appearance or to resemble something of lesser or greater threat to the enemy.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The leaders enforce camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the unit's activities did not change the area's appearance or reveal the presence of military equipment.</li> <li>b. Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night.</li> <li>c. Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking them with terrain, defilade positions, or shields.</li> <li>d. Ensured the prompt and complete police of the debris or spoil from the area.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The leaders know when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) information from higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>b. Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates.</li> <li>c. Incorporated SATRAN information into the tactical plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
01-3301.02-0011	Defend a Company Position	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-8952.00-9050	Employ Directed Energy and Laser Protective Measures	STP 21-II-MQS
04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-328-5301	INSPECT PERSONNEL/EQUIPMENT	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-430-0006	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** Plan for Survivability Operations (05-2-0508)  
(FM 5-103) (FM 5-71-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) that is preparing for defensive operations. An engineer battlefield assessment (EBA) has been completed. The element leaders are participating in the maneuver TF's planning process and the course of action (COA) has been decided. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The survivability plan supports the TF commander's concept and is integrated with the obstacle plan. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander or the executive officer (XO) coordinates for survivability operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the linkup time and location and the call signs and frequency with the supported units.</li> <li>b. Acquired air defense artillery (ADA) coverage.</li> <li>c. Determined the critical friendly zones (CFZs).</li> <li>d. Obtained Class III support.</li> <li>e. Ensured the availability of the casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) plan.</li> </ul>		
* 2. The element leader determines the requirements for the types and numbers of survivability positions based on the TF's COA.		
* 3. The element leader determines construction capabilities.		
* 4. The element leader identifies capabilities versus requirements to determine shortfalls and informs the supported unit commander on these shortfalls.		
* 5. The element leader recommends priorities and task organization to the maneuver commander.		
* 6. The XO prepares the survivability plan and matrix and issues orders to subordinates.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** Direct Survivability Construction (05-2-0510)  
(FM 5-103) (FM 5-71-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is supporting a maneuver brigade that is preparing for defensive operations. Survivability and obstacle plans have been formulated. The battalion commander has task-organized the digging assets under the battalion's control. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The survivability plan is executed and fighting/protective positions are constructed to standard according to priorities and timelines. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The battalion commander issues an operation order (OPORD) containing the construction plan.		
* 2. The battalion commander supervises coordination with the maneuver commanders and on-site engineer officers in charge (OICs) to determine the physical location of the direct- and indirect-fire weapons systems and other brigade assets that require protection.		
3. The battalion coordinates for maintenance and refueling support for the subordinate elements.		
* 4. The battalion commander supervises the execution of the construction matrix and adjusts the plan as necessary.		
5. The battalion reports the status to the engineer brigade and the maneuver brigade.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-3303.03-0013	Prepare Battalion Combat Orders	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP BREACHER



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**TASK:** Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**TASK:** Disrupt Construction of Vehicle Fighting Positions (5-OPFOR-0020)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate the enemy is constructing vehicle fighting positions within its defensive area. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt the enemy's efforts to establish vehicle fighting positions. 1. Locates the defensive area. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the defensive area with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts casualties on the unit. 5. Destroys vehicles. 6. Disrupts the unit's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the unit's allotted time).

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Support a River-Crossing Operation (05-2-0600)  
(FM 90-13) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is supporting a maneuver force during a deliberate river-crossing operation in daylight or darkness. The higher headquarters (HQ) selects the reconnaissance site; the subordinate elements complete the reconnaissance. The company is tasked to prepare and maintain a crossing site or support an assault-boat crossing, or prepare and operate engineer regulating points (ERPs). Bridging assets are available. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The condition of the crossing site does not interfere with the planned flow of vehicles across the river; the assault force gets to the far shore at the right time, in the right place, and in the correct order; or the ERPs facilitate a smooth traffic flow across the rafts or bridge according to the crossing schedule. Digital units send and receive reports and orders to update the common operating picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander conducts troop-leading procedures, with emphasis on preparing to support a river-crossing operation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the personnel and equipment needed to support the river crossing.</li> <li>b. Rehearsed the mission with the platoon leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that each element understood the mission.</li> <li>d. Ensured that each platoon's equipment was checked for serviceability and that each platoon had everything required for the specified mission.</li> <li>e. Task organized the company to support the mission, and identified the organic personnel and equipment support needed for preparing ERPs and crossing sites.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the battalion's Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) to obtain any additional specific details of the mission and, if needed, requested augmentation support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The company supports an assault-boat crossing.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the assault boats.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Inflated the boats.</li> <li>(2) Checked for the proper equipment.   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Ensured that enough paddles for a silent crossing were available: 11 per boat.</li> <li>(b) Ensured that outboard motors (OBMs) for a powered crossing were available.</li> <li>(c) Ensured that enough floatation devices were available: 1 per soldier.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) Ensured that one boat per assault site (powered by an OBM, if available) was designated as a safety boat, if practical.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Rehearsed the crossing with the assaulting force in both day and night conditions.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Designated an engineer crossing-control officer to supervise the embarkation of the assault waves and follow-up force at each assault site.</p> <p>d. Designated an engineer landing officer to control the debarkation on the far shore.</p> <p>e. Marked the far-shore exit points, ensuring that each boat had a specific landing point. The point should be visible during daylight and under reduced visibility conditions.</p> <p>f. Established dismounted rally points on the near shore to link up the assaulting forces with the boats.</p> <p>NOTE: Each assaulting wave may use the same rally points as the previous wave.</p> <p>(1) Crossed each assaulting force in the order designated in the operation order (OPORD) and the crossing plan.</p> <p>(2) Manned the rally points.</p> <p>g. Operated the assault boats.</p> <p>(1) Operated each boat with three engineers during a silent crossing or two engineers during a powered crossing.</p> <p>(2) Used enough passengers in a silent crossing to paddle and control the boat across the river.</p> <p>NOTE: The RB-15 has a maximum capacity of 15 passengers. However, equipment required during the assault may reduce the number of passengers the boat can safely carry. The distance across the river and the current are the governing factors. If conditions permit, each boat should carry squad-size elements to maintain squad integrity.</p> <p>(3) Maintained the assault boats on line and in the order specified by the maneuver crossing force.</p> <p>(4) Landed the boats in the correct location on the far shore.</p> <p>h. Deflated the boats on the far shore or returned them to the near shore for another wave of assault troops. Boats that were returned for another wave arrived at the correct location on the near shore to facilitate a smooth linkup with follow-on forces.</p> <p>i. Repeated the procedure in subtask 2g until all assault waves had crossed.</p> <p>3. The company identifies and maintains a crossing site when ordered.</p> <p>a. Identified a crossing site, through a map or ground reconnaissance, with the following characteristics:</p> <p>(1) Selected a site at the narrow part of the river.</p> <p>(2) Ensured that the current was less than 1.5 meters per second (mps), if possible.</p> <p>(3) Confirmed that both access and egress routes were available on both banks.</p> <p>(4) Ensured that bank slopes were less than 33 percent for an amphibious vehicle swim site.</p> <p>(5) Ensured that the appropriate bank height for a--</p> <p>(a) Raft with ramps was no greater than 1 meter for vertical banks.</p> <p>(b) M4T6 or class-60 bridge was 76 centimeters.</p> <p>(c) Ribbon bridge or raft was 1 meter.</p> <p>(6) Checked for adequate water depth ensuring that it was--</p> <p>(a) Two meters for amphibious vehicles.</p> <p>(b) Over 127 centimeters for shallow draft, bridge-erection boats; light tactical rafts; and ribbon bridges.</p> <p>(c) One hundred two centimeters for a 27-foot bridge erection boat.</p> <p>(d) Seventy-five centimeters for a M4T6.</p> <p>(7) Selected a site where the river bottom was free of obstructions that could interfere with amphibious vehicles, boats, or rafts.</p> <p>b. Prepared the crossing site for heavy equipment.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Covered the entry bank with mobile matting or a gravel base to maintain trafficability.</p> <p>(2) Prepared the exit bank with the same considerations as the entrance bank. Ensured that vehicles swimming across were able to climb the exit bank.</p> <p>(3) Marked the entry and exit points for both day and night crossings according to the OPORD.</p> <p>(4) Ensured that the width of the entry and exit banks matched the width required for the crossing vehicles.</p> <p>c. Ensured that the crossing-site conditions did not interfere with swim, raft, or bridge operations.</p> <p>4. The company prepares and operates ERPs in staging or holding areas or at crossing sites.</p> <p>a. Provided enough space in a covered and concealed location for vehicles moving to the crossing site.</p> <p>b. Located ERPs on or near access routes to the crossing site. The travel time from the ERP to the crossing site was less than the round-trip crossing time for a raft.</p> <p>c. Checked the vehicles at the ERP.</p> <p>(1) At ERPs outside of the crossing area--</p> <p>(a) Briefed drivers on raft or bridge crossing requirements.</p> <p>(b) Ensured that vehicle weights did not exceed the raft or bridge capacity.</p> <p>(c) Diverted the over-class vehicles.</p> <p>(2) At ERPs before the raft sites--</p> <p>(a) Identified the carrying capacity of the rafting or bridging equipment.</p> <p>(b) Established raft loads that preserved unit integrity.</p> <p>(c) Guided the vehicles to the rafts.</p> <p>(3) At ERPs before the bridge sites--</p> <p>(a) Diverted the over-class vehicles.</p> <p>(b) Guided the vehicles within the crossing site to facilitate a smooth traffic flow. Ensured that the vehicles maintained 100-foot spacing and did not exceed 40 kilometers per hour (kph) on bridges during normal crossings.</p> <p>5. The company commander submits progress reports to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

## **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Prepare Expedient Fords (05-2-0603)  
(FM 5-34) (FM 3-34.2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an operation order (OPORD) to construct an expedient ford. The mission statement specifies a site location, the traffic density (vehicle types and numbers), and a completion time. Digital units have performed functionality checks and digital systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs a ford providing unimpeded passage of the traffic density for which it was designed. Gaps of 50 meters or less are prepared in one hour. Gaps of more than 50 meters are prepared in two hours. Digital units report the location and any additional reports via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means to update the situational awareness (SA) and the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The platoon constructs the approaches to the ford. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sloped the approaches no greater than 1:3 for wheeled vehicles and 1:2 for tracked vehicles.</li> <li>b. Placed the material removed from the banks to the side, not in the stream.</li> </ul>		
2. The platoon prepares the ford bottom. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Filled the short, deep gaps with rock or gravel.</li> <li>b. Prepared the soft-mud bottom with tree limbs, brush, or timbers, and then covered it with rock or coarse gravel.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the width was 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter.</li> </ul>		
3. The platoon marks the edges of the ford placing the poles 1.5 meters apart across the stream width on both sides of the ford, and at least 1.5 meters above the water level.		
4. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

**TASK:** Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-75) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 71-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A convoy's main body is attacked by a squad- to platoon-size force. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage due to inadequate immediate-action measures. Digital units send reports, requests for fires, and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The convoy commander prepares for combat operations. The convoy commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>b. Established radio communications with the security elements.</li> <li>c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire).</li> <li>d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the move. Ensured that the convoy had 360-degree coverage while moving.</li> <li>e. Designated en route rally points and the actions taken at those points.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route.</li> <li>g. Received a digital update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or the mission.</li> </ul> <p>2. The convoy prepares for combat operations. The convoy--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded the vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear. Air guards were present.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition.</li> <li>c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP).</li> <li>d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all procedures.</li> </ul> <p>3. The convoy reacts to enemy contact. The convoy--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Scanned the area for the enemy and returned fire at the identified enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Sought available cover.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Maneuvered the vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy. Moved all unarmed vehicles to cover.</p> <p>d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy.</p> <p>e. Deployed the security teams and reported the situation to the convoy commander.</p> <p>* 4. The convoy commander develops the situation. The convoy commander-</p> <p>a. Initiated the fire and maneuver.</p> <p>b. Requested indirect-fire support.</p> <p>c. Sought information on the enemy's strength, composition, and disposition. The convoy commander evaluated the direction and the volume of the enemy fire, the confirmed or suspected enemy positions, and the terrain capacity for the masking forces.</p> <p>* 5. The convoy commander selects a course of action based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation. The convoy commander--</p> <p>a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy's flank.</p> <p>b. Conducted a frontal assault.</p> <p>c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver.</p> <p>6. The security element engages the enemy (within capabilities).</p> <p>* 7. The convoy commander reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters.</p> <p>8. The unit reorganizes and resumes its convoy. The unit--</p> <p>a. Reconstituted the security force.</p> <p>b. Treated and evacuated casualties.</p> <p>c. Reported casualties.</p> <p>d. Redistributed the ammunition and equipment.</p> <p>e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
03-4966.90-0010	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	STP 21-II-MQS
03-5101.00-0282	Direct the Storage of Unit Supplies, Weapons, Equipment, and Ammunition	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
03-5101.00-0283	Supervise the Maintenance of Unit Prescribed Load List	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL	STP 21-I-MQS STP 5-12B24-SM-TG

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
061-283-1002	LOCATE A TARGET BY GRID COORDINATES	STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
071-332-5022	PREPARE A BATTALION SITUATION REPORT (SITREP)	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation	STP 21-24-SMCT
091-309-0711	DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS	STP 21-24-SMCT
113-573-0002	CONDUCT OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) PROCEDURES	STP 21-24-SMCT
113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)	STP 21-24-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

**TASK:** Surrender to the Capturing Unit on the Battlefield (5-OPFOR-0024)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has captured opposing forces' (OPFOR) soldiers, documents, and equipment sensitive to the OPFOR tactical operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal or destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely Delivered Mines (05-3-0113)  
 (FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a construction mission in a tactical environment. Remotely delivered mines impact on or around the element. Personnel have fragmentation armor and ballistic glasses (if available). Each vehicle is equipped with 30 meters of line and light grapnels. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. They have communications, digitally or frequency modulated (FM), to the task force (TF). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company extracts all vehicles and personnel from the minefield. Digital units send and receive orders and reports and update the common operational picture (COP) via FM or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The individual who first discovers a mine initiates the alarm according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>2. The command post (CP) personnel receive the alarm and alert the units. The CP personnel--                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified all of the elements. If the element was--                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Mounted, it accelerated and moved out of the area. When tactically feasible, the element moved in a column along a hard-surfaced road, watching for mines along the route.</li> <li>(2) Dismounted, it moved rapidly out of the area along the best-cleared route, watching for mines and trip wires.</li> <li>(3) Dismounted and deployed in a bivouac or assembly area (AA), it departed immediately along a hard-surfaced road (if practical), watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines.</li> <li>(4) Not able to depart immediately, it remained in covered or protected positions until the minefield was deployed. The element carefully cleared the mines from the positions through detonation and departed as soon as it was feasible, following a hard-surfaced road (if practical) and watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Informed higher headquarters (HQ) and adjacent units of the situation. The CP personnel included a description of the mines and the extent to which they were employed.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Requested counterbattery fire (if the mines were artillery-delivered).</p> <p>* 3. The vehicle commanders check the immediate area. The element personnel remove the mines and the trip wires from the vehicles. The vehicle commanders--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dismounted and inspected the vehicles for mines and trip wires.</li> <li>b. Removed the trip wires from the soft-skinned vehicles using a grapnel or a similar device.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: When using a grapnel to remove trip wires, throw the grapnel away from the covered position. Sound a warning to others in the area before throwing the grapnel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Left any vehicles touching or blocked in by antitank (AT) mines until the remainder of the unit was out of the minefield.</li> </ol> <p>* 4. The element leaders identify unmovable vehicles and designate one or more lanes as exit lanes to allow remaining personnel and vehicles to leave the minefield, normally along previously used access routes.</p> <p>5. The element personnel mark designated lanes and destroy or remove mines within them. The element personnel--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used visual means to locate mines and mark vehicle lanes. The lanes were at least 5 meters wide. The element personnel marked lanes according to the tactical situation and threat; however, the marked areas also allowed for personnel to reenter the minefield and recover equipment or vehicles.</li> <li>b. Destroyed or removed all mines in the lanes, using a grapnel hook or other means, as directed by the company commander. The element personnel detonated only unmovable mines, reducing the likelihood of fragmentation injuries and equipment damage.</li> </ol> <p>* 6. The vehicle commanders direct the personnel ground-guiding the vehicles out of the minefield. The vehicle commanders--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the individual elements moved only when directed to do so by the chain of command.</li> <li>b. Placed any equipment not in contact with a mine or a trip wire onto the vehicles.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the individual crews ground-guided the vehicles to a designated lane or allowed the vehicles to exit the minefield on their own.</li> </ol> <p>7. The company personnel remove any equipment or vehicles remaining after the initial extraction from the minefield. The company personnel--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reentered the minefield using the same exit routes.</li> <li>b. Detonated the minimum number of mines necessary to remove the vehicles or equipment from the minefield.</li> <li>c. Avoided contact with mines and took all possible precautions to ensure that they were not jarred.</li> <li>d. Placed sandbags near the mines to minimize vehicle and equipment damage.</li> <li>e. Removed mines from the equipment using a line or other remote means, and ensured that all personnel remained at a safe distance.</li> <li>f. Placed explosive charges to minimize vehicle damage when detonating mines on the ground.</li> </ol> <p>8. If the position cannot be evacuated, the element personnel clear sufficient mines to allow for mission accomplishment. The element personnel--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cleared the communication lanes between the positions.</li> <li>b. Marked the communication lanes between the positions.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Placed sandbags around mines to prevent injury and damage to the equipment from detonation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Defend Minefield (5-OPFOR-0023)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a minesweeping operation. The opposing forces (OPFOR) have a minefield placed in the enemy's path. The minefield is under constant observation and fire.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR defends a minefield against an enemy element conducting a minesweeping operation. 1. Prevents the unit from detecting the obstacle. 2. Disrupts the minesweeping operations. 3. Prevents the unit from conducting the minefield sweeping operation, prevents the unit from moving all personnel through the breach, or delays the completion of the minefield sweeping operation for more than 45 minutes.

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

**TASK:** Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-0115.05-R01A)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a field environment, an order has been given to emplace a hasty protective row minefield. Copies of Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1-R, M15 and M21 antitank (AT) mines, and M16A1 (Korea only) and M18A1 antipersonnel (AP) mines were issued. The time to conduct a reconnaissance of the area is available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All mines are placed where they can be observed and covered by fires. The AT mines are placed in order to affect likely enemy-mounted avenues of approach (AAs). The AP mines are intermixed with the AT mines and affect dismounted approaches. Minefields are marked and guarded. DA Form 1355-1-R is completed and submitted to the next higher headquarters (HQ). Digital units send and receive reports and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives an OPORD / FRAGO to lay a hasty protective minefield. The element leader reports the intention to lay a hasty protective row minefield to higher headquarters (HQ).                      NOTE: The intention of laying the minefield is reported to higher headquarters (HQ). This is the first of four reports, intention to lay, initiation to lay, status and completion, all must be sent in a secure manner. The brigade commander has the initial authority to employ hasty protective row minefields. He may delegate emplacement authority to the battalion or company commanders on a mission basis. This information and authorization is found in the operation order (OPORD), which is passed to the platoon level.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The element leader determined the location of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Estimated the number and types of mines to be laid.</li> <li>c. Determined whether the mines would be or buried.</li> <li>d. Determined the proposed date and time for starting and completing.</li> <li>e. Element leader conducts pre combat checks (PCC) and pre combat inspections (PCIs)</li> </ul> <p>2. The element leader established security.</p> <p>3. The TC maneuvers the vehicle using a covered and concealed route to the selected minefield location.                      NOTE: In most situations the squad works together to emplace the minefield. For larger minefields the coordination for support from other combat arms must be made to supplement manpower.</p> <p>4. The TC and the driver move their vehicle to an over watch position.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Used cover and concealment.                      b. Moved into a hull-down position, if possible.                      c. Covered likely enemy positions and approaches.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader and subordinate leaders conduct a reconnaissance of the proposed minefield area to identify:                      a. Overwatched likely enemy AAs.                      b. Enhanced key weapons systems.                      c. Covered dead space and ensured the minefield is covered by fire.                      d. Established an easily identifiable reference point (RP) between the minefield and the unit position.                      e. Identified mine locations.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader and subordinate leaders return to draw mines and needed equipment to emplace the minefield.</p> <p>7. Element leader breaks down personnel into four teams, Siting and recording party, marking party, mine dump party and laying party.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader reports the initiation of the minefield.                      a. Specified the start time of the minefield emplacement.                      b. Specified the exact location of the minefield.                      c. Specified the target number of the minefield.</p> <p>9. The element leader directs the siting party to layout the minefield, reference points, landmarks and row markers. Initiation report is submitted to higher head quarters.</p> <p>NOTE: The mines are not armed and do not have trip wires attached. Only metallic mines are used. No booby traps or anti handling devices are used. A general rule of thumb for spacing AT and AP mines (AP mines are only used in Korea) is to place them no closer than 4 meters. There is no maximum distance; however, it should not pose any tactical impact to adjacent friendly units.</p> <p>a. Installed the mines.                      (1) Placed the row markers at the beginning and end of each row. The markers were labeled with the letter of the row, the number one for the beginning of the row and number two for the end of that lettered row. The minefield is laid from right to left</p> <p>NOTE: Markers should be easily identifiable objects such as steel pickets that can be found with an AN/PSS-12 mine detector.</p> <p>(2) Placed individual mines far enough apart to prevent simultaneous detonation.</p> <p>NOTE: The mines should be no closer than 4 meters for surface laid M15 mines and 7.6 meters for surface laid M19 mines. The distance from the row marker to the first mine in that row is the spacing used throughout that row. The spacing between rows should be no closer than 8 meters or 15 meters if anti personnel mines are used</p> <p>(3) Emplaced the rows outside of the hand grenade range, but within the range of small-caliber weapons.</p> <p>b. Emplaced AT mines so that they would affect likely AAs.                      c. Emplaced AP mines so that they were intermixed with AT mines to deny the enemy dismounted AAs. (M18A1 AP mines will be command-detonated when NOT used in Korea. M16A1 AP mines will be used in Korea only.)                      (1) Buried M21or M15 AT mines with only the tilt rod exposed.                      (2) Camouflaged the tilt rod with brush or tall grass, if time permitted.                      (3) Element leader submits a strip record to the officer in charge to record the data on the 1355-1R</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Buried M16A1 AP mines (Korea mines only) up to the bottom of the release-pin ring leaving only the pressure prongs above ground. This provided the stability required for proper employment.</p> <p>*10. The element leader records the minefield on DA Form 1355-1-R.            NOTE: All measurements will be recorded in meters on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>a. Selected and recorded an easily identifiable and relatively permanent reference point (RP) in front of his position.            NOTE: A good RP should have some degree of survivability from an artillery barrage.</p> <p>b. Determined the scale to be used in plotting the minefield on the form.            NOTE: The following formula is used to determine the scale. The distance from the RP to the farthest point in the minefield plus 10 meters and divided by four equals the scale. Adding the 10 meters is a safety margin to ensure that the sum of the minefield sketch is entirely contained within the largest ring. Dividing by four is a constant and represents the concentric rings on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>c. Plotted the RP in the center of the circles on the form.            NOTE: The row closest to the enemy is designated by using an "A," while "B" and "C" are used for succeeding rows and so on.</p> <p>d. Indicated the end of each row marker by labeling it with the letter of the row: a number one for one end of the row and a number two for the other end.</p> <p>e. Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the last row.            NOTE: Determine the magnetic azimuth in degrees from the RP to the first row marker and record it as "B1." Use "B1" if there are two rows, "C1" if there are three rows, and so forth. This marks the beginning of that row.</p> <p>f. Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the next row, which would be "A1" in this case.</p> <p>g. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth to each row marker.            NOTE: Measure the distance and the azimuth from "A1" to the first mine to be recorded, then measure the distance and the azimuth from the first mine to the second mine and so on until all mine locations are recorded. Continue this procedure for each row. As each mine is recorded, assign it a number to identify it in the tabular block of DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>h. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth from the RP to "B2" and from "B2" to "A2."</p> <p>i. Tied in the RP with a permanent landmark.            NOTE: This landmark may be used to help relocate the minefield should it be abandoned or handed over to another unit.</p> <p>j. Completed the tabular information blocks by specifying the unit and the precise description of the RP, the kind and type of markers used to identify the rows, the map sheet number, the name, the signature of the officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC), and the date and time. Described how the minefield was measured in the "remarks" block; for example, the minefield was paced out and paces were multiplied by 0.75.</p> <p>11. The element arms the mines.            NOTE: The minimum safe distance is observed while arming ensuring that 25 meters is maintained from other personnel and other rows being armed simultaneously. The minefield must be fenced on all sides if M18A1 AP mines are employed and the minefield will be in place for more than 72 hours.</p> <p>a. Worked from the enemy side or front of the minefield to the friendly side rear of the minefield.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Collected and stored safeties, shipping plugs, and any related items in a waterproof container. The pins clips and associated items are placed 30cm behind the row marker or the reference point and the location annotated on the 1355-1R</p> <p>c. Camouflaged the mines, if time permitted.</p> <p>d. Recorded the items and their location in the "remarks" block on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>e. Informed the squad members of the location of DA Form 1355-1-R, shipping plugs, and safeties.</p> <p>*12. The element leader recovers mine safeties and shipping plugs.</p> <p>*13. The element leader reports the completion of laying the minefield.</p> <p>a. Reported to the authorizing commander, by using a secure means, that the minefield had been completed.</p> <p>b. Submitted the completed DA Form 1355-1-R to the authorizing commander.</p> <p>Note: Digital units place the obstacle on the overlay and populate the system to allow friendly units to have situational awareness in the area of operations.</p> <p>*14. The element leader makes sure that the minefield is kept under observation at all times to prevent the enemy from breaching or booby-trapping the mines.</p> <p>*15. The element leader establishes a guard to protect friendly troops and noncombatants from entering the mined area.</p> <p>NOTE: If AP mines are used (Korea only) in the minefield and are to remain in place for longer than 72 hours, the minefield must be fenced on all sides.</p> <p>*16. The element leader submits additional reports, in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP) or as necessary.</p> <p>Note: Digital units can send and receive reports via frequency modulated or through digital means. Graphics can be added to the FBCB2 for friendly units to have situational awareness.</p> <p>a. Submitted oral progress reports, during the emplacing process, concerning the amount of work completed.</p> <p>b. Submitted a written report of transfer, if responsibility for a minefield was altered.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-0210)  
 (FM 5-250) (TM 750-244-2) (TM 750-244-3)  
 (TM 750-244-6) (TM 750-244-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An enemy assault penetrates the element's position. The element leader is ordered to evacuate the position and disable those items that the platoon cannot haul or move. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element evacuates the position and disables all critical items that cannot be hauled or moved. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader prioritizes the equipment to be disabled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used information in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Identified critical equipment as communication (radios and keying material), transportation assets (tracked and wheeled vehicles and construction equipment), barrier material (mines, wire, and explosives), and weapons systems.</li> <li>c. Prioritized the disabling of the equipment based on its value to the enemy.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling tracked and wheeled vehicles, including the construction equipment, and directs unit members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements, such as the gearbox, the starter, the battery, the engine block, the transmission, the instrument panel, and any of the communications equipment.</li> <li>b. Drained the hydraulic system and cut the hoses.</li> <li>c. Used explosives to disable transportation assets, such as tracked or wheeled vehicles and trailers.</li> <li>d. Used a bayonet or another cutting tool to slash all tires.</li> <li>e. Drained the oil and ran the engine until it seized.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling the communications equipment and directs the unit members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements using an ax, a pick, a sledgehammer, or any heavy implement. Smashed all the dials, knobs, and gauges and demolished all the antennas.</li> <li>b. Used explosives to disable the communications equipment.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The platoon leader determines the amount of barrier material (the mines, the wire, and the explosives) to use and destroys the remaining items with explosives.</p> <p>* 5. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling an organic bridge with demolitions.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Considered whether to use partial or complete destruction.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Considered the quantity and the type of explosive.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">c. Considered whether to use an electric or a nonelectric firing system.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">d. Considered what the appropriate time would be to disable or demolish the bridge.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">e. Considered the method of coordination to use with adjacent forces.</p> <p>6. The platoon's members disable critical equipment during the evacuation according to the platoon leader's plan.</p> <p>* 7. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit's SOP.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

#### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Establish a Company Defensive Position (07-2-0414.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 24-35-1) (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) mission requiring the unit to provide its own security and defense. The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements consisting of as much as a motorized rifle company or airborne equivalent have been active in friendly rear areas. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company completes all preparations for the defense within the time specified by the OPORD. The company is not surprised by the OPFOR, suffers no casualties from friendly fire, and repels the OPFOR attacks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: The platoons execute the following tasks: Establish Unit Defense, Defend Unit Position, Construct a Protective Obstacle, and Conduct Hasty Minefield Operations, when the company is performing this task.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander develops a defensive plan according to the OPORD or the FRAGO.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established sectors or boundaries for the subordinate elements.</li> <li>b. Assigned battle positions for the company elements.</li> <li>c. Designated the primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.</li> <li>d. Designated the engagement areas (EAs).</li> <li>e. Developed the fire-support (FS) plan, including the target reference points (TRPs) forward, within, and to the rear of the defensive position.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander conducts a leader's reconnaissance with key company leaders.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established local security.</li> <li>b. Confirmed or modified his plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The leaders survey the terrain to finalize their defensive plans.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the covered and concealed routes to and between all positions.</li> <li>b. Identified all avenues of approach (AAs).</li> <li>c. Identified dead space.</li> <li>d. Requested indirect FS to cover the dead space and the likely AAs.</li> <li>e. Identified locations for the company command post (CP), observation posts (OPs), the supply point, and the company casualty collection point.</li> <li>f. Identified potential landing zones (LZs) that the enemy may use for air assault.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The commander designates unit positions or sectors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concentrated fire on the most dangerous and most likely AAs.</li> <li>b. Selected positions with good fields of fire and observation of enemy ground and air forces.</li> <li>c. Provided cover and concealment.</li> <li>d. Permitted adequate dispersion laterally and in-depth.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The company establishes unit security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the OPs and the air guards.</li> <li>b. Conducted patrols in areas that could not be observed.</li> <li>c. Emplaced early-warning devices.</li> <li>d. Conducted stand-to procedures according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) or order.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The leaders position key weapons and establish fields of fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Oriented the units to provide all-around security.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the weapons covered the most dangerous AAs, EAs, or selected kill zones based on the defensive technique.</li> <li>c. Effected mutual support between elements.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the antiarmor weapons covered the likely armor AAs.</li> <li>e. Registered indirect fire and final protection fires (FPF) on the most dangerous dismounted AAs, where possible.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The leaders check the position for potential problems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Walked the positions and adjusted for fields of fire.</li> <li>b. Walked the terrain in front of the positions to determine if personnel accomplished their assigned tasks.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The leaders coordinate with flank elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy AAs.</li> <li>b. Exchanged information on the OP locations, patrols, unit signals, and passage points.</li> <li>c. The commander coordinated a withdrawal plan.</li> </ul> <p>9. The company establishes communications, if available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used wire as primary communications, if available.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the platoon or company CP had communication with the OPs, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and FS.</li> <li>c. Conducted periodic communications checks to ensure that all communications equipment was operational.</li> <li>d. Planned and provided for an alternate means of communications.</li> </ul> <p>10. The company emplaces minefields and obstacles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested and received clearance to lay protective minefields.</li> <li>b. Emplaced the mines or obstacles according to the company's obstacle plan and recorded the minefield on the standard minefield form.</li> <li>c. Covered the mines or obstacles by observation and direct and indirect fires.</li> <li>d. Reported the location of the mines or obstacles to all elements, and forwarded the standard minefield record to the next higher command as soon as possible.</li> </ul> <p>11. The company defends against an enemy assault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Detected and reported enemy contact by the OPs.</li> <li>b. Withdrew the OPs on order or according to the company's SOP.</li> <li>c. Increased the intensity of defensive fires as the enemy elements closed to within range of each individual or weapons system.</li> </ul> <p>*12. The commander or forward observer (FO) defends against an enemy assault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Called for and engaged the attacking force with indirect fire according to the company's SOP.</li> <li>b. Requested FPF from the supporting indirect-fire units as the enemy neared the final protective line (FPL).</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*13. The commander defends against an enemy assault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated direct-fire engagement of the attacking force according to the unit's SOP.</li> <li>b. Executed the obstacle plan according to the battalion's OPORD or FRAGO.</li> <li>c. Increased the intensity of defensive fires as the enemy elements closed to within range of additional weapons.</li> </ul> <p>14. The company consolidates and reorganizes during lulls in the fighting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executed platoon consolidation and reorganization.</li> <li>b. Treated and evacuated casualties.</li> <li>c. Transmitted the status report and requested replacement personnel.</li> <li>d. Requested resupply.</li> <li>e. Replaced damaged barriers and obstacles.</li> <li>f. Restored communication.</li> <li>g. Repositioned the OPs that were withdrawn during the engagement.</li> <li>h. Resumed security and patrolling activities.</li> </ul> <p>15. The company continues to defend.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Forced the enemy to withdraw.</li> <li>b. Disengaged by order of higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>c. Ordered the reposition of platoons to alternate or supplementary positions as needed.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
04-3302.01-0003	Conduct a Reconnaissance	STP 21-II-MQS
		STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0008	Analyze Terrain	STP 21-II-MQS
		STP 21-I-MQS
071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A	STP 21-24-SMCT
	FIGHTING POSITION	
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** During combat operations, the unit encounters a UXO hazard. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit reacts to the UXO hazard while continuing the mission, without loss of personnel or equipment. Digital units report the locations via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means updating information for the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit recognizes the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the UXO by type.</li> <li>b. Identified the UXO by subgroup.</li> <li>c. Observed all safety precautions.</li> </ul> * 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evacuated the area as appropriate.</li> <li>b. Determined the appropriate action.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Avoided the UXO hazard.</li> <li>(2) Instituted protective measures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> * 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose leaders to mark the area.</li> <li>b. Briefed leaders on the area to be marked.</li> </ul> * 4. The element marks the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marked all the logical approach routes.</li> <li>b. Ensured the UXO was visible from all markers.</li> </ul> * 5. The unit reports the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated the UXO spot report.</li> <li>b. Determined the priority based on the current situation.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
093-403-5010	RECOGNIZE MILITARY EXPLOSIVE ORDNANCE BY TYPE	STP 21-24-SMCT
093-403-5020	TAKE IMMEDIATE ACTION BASED ON CONFIRMATION OF AN EXPLOSIVE HAZARD	STP 21-24-SMCT
093-403-5030	REPORT EXPLOSIVE HAZARD	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Use Passive Air-Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)  
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)  
 (FM 44-80)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The platoon's weapon control status (WCS) is WEAPONS HOLD. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) do not detect the unit. Digital units send reports and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 or blackout conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader uses passive air-defense measures in a tactical position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide the personnel and the equipment to limit vulnerability. Air situational awareness (SA) was achieved by the unit's monitoring of the simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs).</li> <li>b. Covered or shaded any shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.</li> <li>c. Established and rehearsed the air-attack alarms.</li> <li>d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to air attack.</li> <li>e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect the personnel and the vulnerable mission-essential equipment.</li> <li>f. Manned observation posts (OPs), daytime or nighttime, to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs).</li> <li>g. Established a listening watch on the air-defense early-warning net, if the equipment was available and operational.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The unit leader uses passive air-defense measures in a convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all personnel received the convoy commander's briefing.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged the vehicles and the equipment before moving out.</li> <li>c. Selected column interval based on the instructions, the mission, and the terrain.</li> <li>d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the avenues of approach (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>e. Assigned soldiers to air-guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees.</li> <li>f. Identified threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) visually.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher headquarters (HQ). h. Established and rehearsed the air-attack alarms.  3. Unit personnel use passive air-defense measures when occupying or displacing. a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order. b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns. c. Assigned air guards to the sectors of search that covered 360 degrees, and maintained the coverage until the convoy completed the movement. d. Identified threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) visually. e. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher HQ. f. Established the vehicle order of precedence.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)

(FM 44-100)  
 (FM 44-80)

(FM 44-64)

(FM 44-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. The unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs). The unit is in a tactical position. The weapon control status (WCS) is WEAPONS TIGHT. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit destroys or forces attacking aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) away from friendly positions. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 or blackout conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The leaders direct combined-arms air-defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air-attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Organized the unit to defensive positions.</li> <li>c. Ordered a search of the assigned sectors for aerial platforms.</li> <li>d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to the higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: When making the decision of whether or not to fire at nonattacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, take into consideration the assigned mission and the tactical situation. The unit must positively and visually identify aerial platforms prior to engaging with small arms, unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act.</p> <p>DANGER: Munitions cannot distinguish between friend and foe. Review all airspace control measures. You must perform all precautionary measures to ensure that the munitions you fire do not cause injury or death to friendly forces or damage to the allied equipment. Even computerized systems require close observation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Made the engagement decision.</li> <li>f. Engaged the unit in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the unit's position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. Performed all precautionary measures to ensure that no fratricide occurred during the engagement.</li> <li>h. Directed the personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO																					
<p>i. Sent the PIRs to the higher HQ.</p> <p>NOTES:</p> <p>(1) The aim points for the propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for the helicopters.</p> <p>(2) Select the aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals approximately 91 meters.</p> <p>(3) Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and the machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts.</p> <p>(4) Establish the preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position.</p> <p>(5) Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire, a coordinated high-volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through, will achieve the desired results.</p> <p>TYPE AERIAL</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>PLATFORMS</th> <th>COURSE</th> <th>AIM POINT</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Jet/Cruise Missile</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/Cruise Missile</td> <td>Overhead</td> <td>Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/Cruise Missile</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above aerial platforms nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>One-half football field in front of nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Hovering</td> <td>Slightly above helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit's position as directed by the unit commander.</p> <p>* 2. The leaders direct small arms air-defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air-attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth, or had the vehicle operators continue to move the unit.</li> <li>c. Moved vehicles to covered, concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion.</li> <li>d. Engaged the nonattacking aircraft only as directed.</li> <li>e. Identified the threat aerial platforms visually.</li> <li>f. Reported all aerial platforms action to the higher HQ.</li> <li>g. Prepared the unit to engage on the orders of the senior leader.</li> <li>h. Engaged the unit (when ordered to do so by the senior leader) in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms.</li> <li>i. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement of aircraft.</li> </ol> <p>* 3. The leaders direct combined-arms air-defense measures against the aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air-attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Engaged all available personnel immediately in attacking the aerial platforms per the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).</li> <li>c. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>d. Ensured that personnel assigned to observation posts (OPs) continued to scan their assigned sectors.</li> <li>e. Reported any aircraft action to the higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Reported any casualties to the higher HQ.</li> <li>g. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit's position as directed by the tactical situation or the TSOP.</li> </ol>	PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT	Jet/Cruise Missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose	Jet/Cruise Missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose	Jet/Cruise Missile	Directly at you	Slightly above aerial platforms nose	Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of nose	Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above helicopter/UAV body	Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above helicopter/UAV body		
PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT																					
Jet/Cruise Missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose																					
Jet/Cruise Missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose																					
Jet/Cruise Missile	Directly at you	Slightly above aerial platforms nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above helicopter/UAV body																					
Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above helicopter/UAV body																					

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The unit leader, or noncommissioned officers (NCOs), directs small arms air-defense measures during the convoy movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles alternately to the shoulders of the road, or off the road if possible. Turned to covered, concealed positions, if the terrain permitted.</li> <li>c. Maintained vehicle intervals, or increased the interval or dispersion. The vehicle operators used evasive driving techniques.</li> <li>d. Ordered the unit to dismount and take up firing positions.</li> <li>e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking.</li> <li>f. Identified the aerial platforms.</li> <li>g. Engaged the unit in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> <li>h. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the attack.</li> <li>i. Reported the attack and submitted the PIR to the higher HQ.</li> <li>j. Reported any casualties to the higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Perform Risk-Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)  
 (AR 385-10) (FM 100-5) (FM 25-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is deployed performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All leaders and soldiers are aware of all potential safety problems inherent in the conduct of the task. The company trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger unit members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for the specified and implied missions (tasks).</li> <li>b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process.</li> <li>c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the missions or conditions changed.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent based on the stated training objective.</li> <li>b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents.</li> <li>c. Described the operation in terms of high-, medium-, or low-risk.</li> <li>d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The commander, or leaders, eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk.</li> <li>b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards.</li> <li>c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment.</li> <li>d. Briefed the elements prior to all of the operations.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element carries out the safety procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received safety briefings prior to all of the operations.</li> <li>b. Practiced the safety procedures during all of the mission rehearsals.</li> <li>c. Made on-the-spot safety corrections.</li> </ul> <p>NOTES:                      1. Safety is a part of realism-- and realism includes building safety into the training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second nature during war</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(refer to Field Manual [FM] 25-100). 2. Risk: FM 100-5 emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take "risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems" as an imperative of the Air-Land Battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum extent possible ensures winning the battle. Formally, risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific period of time or number of operational cycles as defined by the Center for Army Safety.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies (05-2-0042)  
(FM 63-1) (FM 63-2) (FM 63-20)  
(FM 63-21) (FM 63-3) (FM 63-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is supporting a maneuver force. The maneuver's Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) requests supplies to implement the unit's obstacle plan and arranges for the supplies to be throughput to the task force (TF) area. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational to request combat-support (CS) and combat-service-support (CSS) supplies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company receives and distributes Class IV and/or Class V (engineer) throughput supplies to sustain platoon operations without impeding the mission accomplishment. Digital units send and receive requests for throughput supplies via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The unit receives throughput supplies.</li> <li>2. The executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) determines the supply point and linkup point locations.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the location was covered and concealed and convenient to the platoon's work sites.</li> <li>b. Identified a linkup point with the supporting CSS element. Ensured that the location was easily identifiable and located on or near a main supply route (MSR).</li> <li>c. Designated a guide at the linkup point.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The unit off-loads the supplies.</li> <li>4. The XO or the 1SG plans coordination.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the material-handling equipment (MHE).</li> <li>b. Coordinated troop labor, if needed.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The unit loads the supplies on company vehicles or establishes a holding area and a storage site.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated for additional trucks, if needed.</li> <li>b. Designated parking or holding areas that allowed for dispersion, camouflage, cover, concealment, and good access and egress routes.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The unit establishes control measures for movement.</li> <li>7. The unit establishes a storage site to protect the supplies from the elements and provide security.</li> <li>8. The unit distributes the supplies using the supply-point distribution or the unit-distribution method.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supply-point distribution method.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified items needed for the engineer-platoon tasks.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Established a pickup schedule. (3) Notified the platoons of the time and place of issue. (4) Organized available MHE, if required. (5) Issued supplies. (6) Obtained new requests from the platoons. b. Unit-distribution method. (1) Identified items needed for the engineer-platoon tasks. (2) Established a resupply sequence. (3) Uploaded the supply vehicles using reverse loading. (4) Established a linkup point and time with the platoons. If the platoons were in the battlefield or TF area, coordinated with the battalion or TF S4 for logistics package (LOGPAC) operations. (5) Issued supplies. (6) Obtained new requests from the platoons.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Coordinate for Food Service Support (05-2-0051)  
(FM 10-23) (AR 30-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company does not have an organic mess capability. Coordination for food service support is required. The unit is conducting continuous tactical operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit coordinates for three nutritious meals daily for all assigned and attached soldiers. Soldiers do not miss meals because of coordination lapses. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The company commander or food service officer (FSO) determines the daily feeding plan.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined personnel strength, including attached and supporting personnel.</li> <li>b. Identified locations and times for meals. Developed a distribution plan to support the mission.</li> <li>c. Considered consolidation of subunits.</li> <li>d. Determined the type of rations based on mission constraints, that is A-, T- or meal, ready-to-eat (MRE) rations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The company commander or FSO requests and coordinates for meals as required.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared a feeding report and forwarded the report to the brigade Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the nature of the requirement.</li> <li>(2) Established the date the meals were required.</li> <li>(3) Determined the total number of meals required.</li> <li>(4) Established the time of pick up or delivery of the meals.</li> <li>(5) Determined the location of the units needing delivery.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Informed the brigade S4 of any changes that would affect the operation. Maintained a tolerance of plus or minus 5 percent of the total head count for hot meals.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the times and locations for pick up or delivery.</li> <li>c. Submitted requests for hot meals at least 8 hours prior to the meal, if possible.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The FSO supervises Class I operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Followed the company's standing operating procedure (SOP) for the tactical feeding plan.</li> <li>b. Served the hot meals as soon after pickup or delivery as possible.</li> <li>c. Set up a one-way staggered serving line (one line on each side of the central distribution site) if in danger of being attacked.</li> <li>c. Ensured that all soldiers had their mess kits available, if used.</li> <li>d. Set up a one-way straight serving line (one line on each side of the central distribution site) if attack was unlikely.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Dispersed the serving line in 5-meter (17-foot) intervals to reduce casualty potential. f. Ensured that soldiers dispersed while eating to prevent mass casualties from an enemy attack. g. Established washing facilities. h. Disposed of all trash/garbage properly.  4. The company commander ensures that proper field sanitation measures are followed.  5. The FSO ensures that proper signature head-count and cash-collection procedures are used during the tactical operation. NOTE: One-line entries may be authorized during training in the field where the collection of signatures is impractical as determined by the company commander or FSO (for example, limited feeding time, troop dispersion, or weather conditions).  6. The company commander ensures that the food containers are promptly returned and all trash/garbage is properly disposed of.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).



**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Conduct Administrative Operations (05-2-1007)  
 (FM 12-6) (FM 21-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A company is operating in a tactical environment with replacement personnel arriving. The company's headquarters has all assigned personnel; equipment; and required forms, manuals, and standing operating procedures (SOPs). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company integrates the replacement personnel. The company prepares and submits personnel reports and actions while sustaining operations and providing for the discipline, the health, the welfare, and the morale of all assigned personnel. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP)4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander integrates the replacement personnel and assigns them to subordinate elements within the company.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Oriented the replacement personnel before their assignment.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the unit's mission and the current situation.</li> <li>(2) Explained the chain-of-command procedures.</li> <li>(3) Explained the warning-system, safety, and security procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Assigned the replacement personnel on a priority basis.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. The company personnel prepare the personnel daily summary (PDS).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Combined and consolidated the subordinate-element data.</li> <li>b. Prepared the PDS.</li> <li>c. Submitted the PDS to the battalion Personnel and Administration Center (PAC).</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The company personnel process Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1155 and 1156.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Posted and maintained the unit's casualty record.</li> <li>b. Posted and maintained DA Form 1156.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The company leaders in the chain of command review and verify the completed DA 1155s, and submit the reports to the battalion PAC.</li> <li>* 5. The company leaders initiate actions to request awards or promotions.</li> <li>* 6. The company leaders coordinate individual requests for administrative actions requiring approval from higher headquarters.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Adhered to the local battalion PAC policies.</li> <li>b. Relayed all duty status and other actions to the battalion PAC for processing.</li> <li>c. Coordinated all finance actions through the battalion PAC and the finance office.</li> <li>d. Approved or disapproved personal administrative actions (pass, leave, and emergency leave).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 7. The company leaders initiate judicial and nonjudicial punishment actions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Drafted a summary of the incident or the violation.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Obtained and assembled investigation reports and witness statements. c. Reviewed the incident or the violation to determine the best course of action. d. Administered nonjudicial punishment.  * 8. The company leader monitors personal hygiene and field-sanitation procedures. a. Ensured that the means were available for obtaining assistance (according to the SOP). b. Coordinated with the higher headquarters for morale and personnel support.  * 9. The company commander initiates DA Form 67-8.  *10. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant initiates DA Forms 2166-7 and 2166-7-1. a. Drafted the work sheets for the Noncommissioned Officer (NCO) Checklist/Record and the Noncommissioned Officer Evaluation Report (NCOER). b. Forwarded the draft work sheets to the battalion PAC. c. Maintained the appropriate privacy measures during all stages of the process.  *11. The company leaders coordinate the medical and dental treatment of all assigned personnel (for nonbattle injuries). a. Ensured that the procedures for medical and dental assistance were coordinated with higher headquarters. b. Adhered to the medical or dental evaluation of the medical or dental authority.  *12. The company leaders coordinate for chaplain assistance. a. Coordinated the presentation of the religious services. b. Advised personnel on how to obtain chaplain assistance.  *13. The company leaders coordinate for Red Cross assistance. a. Advised personnel on how to obtain Red Cross assistance. b. Recommended personnel for Red Cross assistance.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
03-0001.00-1011	Recommend Enlisted Personnel for Promotion	STP 21-II-MQS
03-0150.00-1003	Recommend Enlisted Personnel for Reduction for Inefficiency or Misconduct	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
		STP 21-I-MQS

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
03-0170.01-1005	Perform Wartime Strength Accounting at Unit Level	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Conduct Combat Refueling Operations (05-2-1024)  
 (FM 10-67-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is conducting refueling operations. The unit to be refueled has selected and secured a refueling area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit refuels the vehicles without affecting ongoing operations. The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) organizes a refueling operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the next higher supply activity for a bulk-fuel supply, according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Established a refueling schedule for engineer equipment (high-consumption vehicles). Modified the schedule, as needed, to ensure that the company accomplished critical missions.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting units for additional refueling support, as needed.</li> <li>d. Selected a refueling point centralized to the work sites. The refueling point had good cover or concealment locations and good entrance and exit routes.</li> </ul> <p>2. Refueling personnel support the unit according to the established schedule.</p> <p>3. Refueling personnel establish the fuel point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Grounded the fuel truck using the procedures specified in the appropriate technical manual (TM).</li> <li>b. Positioned fire extinguishers in a readily available location.</li> <li>c. Established traffic-control patterns to minimize congestion.</li> </ul> <p>4. Company personnel conduct the refueling operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Turned off the vehicle's engines.</li> <li>b. Grounded the fuel truck to the refueling vehicle.</li> <li>c. Issued packaged petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) items, as needed.</li> <li>d. Maintained dispersion, basing the spacing on the terrain; at a minimum, maintained spacing of 50 meters.</li> <li>e. Maintained noise and light discipline.</li> <li>f. Observed safety procedures.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The XO or the 1SG coordinates for bulk refueling for the fuel truck.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the location of the bulk refueling point.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for additional bulk refueling, if needed.</li> <li>c. Restocked onboard packaged POL items.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. Company leaders monitor the refueling process.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 7. The XO or the 1SG updates the fuel forecast with the battalion task force (TF) Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points (05-2-1068)  
(FM 5-100) (FM 20-32) (FM 90-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The task force (TF) is in continuous operations during daylight or darkness. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer elements are in support of TF operations during defensive and offensive operation. The location of Class IV and Class V supply points must be established in order to sustain combat effectiveness. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader analyzes the mission and assesses what Class IV and Class V supplies are necessary for mission accomplishment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that basic loads were on hand for each weapons system.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Basic loads can be used to accomplish the mission; however, resupply should come out of the mission loads.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Determined critical events where Class IV and Class V supplies were needed according to the decision support template (DST) and the synchronization matrix. This is done in coordination with the TF engineer.</li> <li>c. Organized engineer elements that were task-organized to pick up, transport, and deliver supplies in a timely manner.</li> <li>d. Transmitted requests.</li> </ul> <p>2. The TF Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) coordinates for Class IV and Class V supplies.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the supporting combat service support (CSS) to determine the availability of Class IV and Class V supplies.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the pickup points of the using units.</li> <li>c. Requested additional haul assets when the organic transportation assets were depleted.</li> <li>d. Determined personnel requirements for the Class IV or Class V supply points. Tasked for personnel in the TF operation order (OPORD), if not in the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).</li> <li>e. Determined the necessary quantities of Class IV and Class V materials. Coordinated with the TF engineer.</li> <li>f. Tracked the current quantities of material in the Class IV and Class V supply points.</li> </ul> <p>3. The platoon leader or sergeant prepares to execute the haul mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the pickup-point location with the company operations.</li> <li>c. Moved assets to the designated location and performed the haul mission.</li> <li>d. Distributed assets according to the obstacle plan allocation.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A)  
 (FM 8-10-6) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)  
 (FM 57-38)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. The unit has no organic medical treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualties are transported as soon as the tactical situation permits according to the TSOP, OPORD, provisions of the Geneva Convention, and Field Manual (FM) 8-10-6. Digital units send information via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital systems. At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to transport casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander and leaders supervise the transport of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored casualty transport operations for compliance with FM 8-10-6 and the TSOP.</li> <li>b. Identified casualty collection points.</li> <li>c. Identified transport requirements.</li> <li>d. Supervised the preparation of casualties for transport.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the transport of casualties from the unit area with higher HQ personnel element according to FM 8-10-6 and the TSOP.</li> <li>f. Coordinated security requirements for the pick-up site with subelements and higher HQ operations element.</li> <li>g. Disseminated transport information to unit personnel.</li> <li>h. Forwarded the casualty feeder report and witness statements to higher HQ personnel element according to FM 12-6 and the TSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. Unit personnel prepare casualties for transport.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided first aid treatment to casualties.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: See task 08-2-0003 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Reported casualties, as required.</li> <li>c. Collected classified documents such as the signal operation instructions (SOI) and standing signal instructions (SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists.</li> <li>d. Secured the custody of organizational equipment according to the TSOP.</li> <li>e. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to unit HQ according to the TSOP.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the type of manual carry appropriate to the situation and injury.</li> <li>b. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ol> <p>4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified litter teams.</li> <li>b. Constructed an improvised litter from available material, as required.</li> <li>c. Secured the casualty on the litter.</li> <li>d. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ol> <p>5. Unit personnel transport casualties to a medical treatment facility (MTF) using available vehicles.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded the maximum number of casualties according to FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>b. Secured casualties in the vehicle.</li> <li>c. Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ol> <p>* 6. The commander and leaders request aeromedical evacuation.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmitted the request according to FM 8-10-6, the OPORD, and the TSOP.</li> <li>b. Selected the landing site (which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off) according to FM 8-10-6 and FM 57-38.</li> <li>c. Supervised the removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about prior to aircraft arrival.</li> <li>d. Supervised the security of the landing site according to the TSOP.</li> <li>e. Ensured the landing zone (LZ) is appropriately marked (light sets, smoke, and so forth) according to the TSOP, if required.</li> </ol> <p>7. Unit personnel assist in loading ambulance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed the proper carrying and loading techniques according to FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>b. Loaded casualties in the sequence directed by the crew.</li> <li>c. Loaded casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort.</li> <li>d. Employed safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and the TSOP.</li> <li>e. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP.</li> </ol> <p>8. Unit personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed MOPP 4.</li> <li>b. Marked contaminated casualties according to the TSOP.</li> <li>c. Notified the supporting MTF that contaminated casualties are en route to their location.</li> <li>d. Transported casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station.</li> <li>e. Protected casualties from further contamination during transport.</li> </ol> <p>9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained security of EPW casualties according to the TSOP.</li> <li>b. Searched EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance prior to transport.</li> </ol>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
c. Transported EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva Convention and the TSOP.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)  
 (FM 22-51)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Combat-health-support (CHS) operations have commenced. Unit personnel are deployed in support of higher headquarters (HQ) operations. The unit's sleep plan and the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) to manage battle-fatigue (BF) soldiers have been developed. Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period of time causing stressful situations for personnel. The commander has directed that battlefield stress-management procedures be implemented. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.

**NOTE:** Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some military-occupational-specialty (MOS-) specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS-specific medical tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress-prevention implementation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander and leaders perform stress-prevention leader actions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation.</li> <li>c. Briefed the leader's intention to all unit personnel.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning the unit's missions, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Instituted an information-dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors.</li> <li>g. Informed personnel of the availability of religious support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander and leaders implement the sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities.</li> <li>b. Adjusted the sleep plan as dictated by the tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Enforced the sleep plan according to the TSOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alternated cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required.</li> <li>b. Rotated unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy.</p> <p>d. Adjusted task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.</p> <p>* 4. The leaders implement stress-coping and stress-management techniques.</p> <p>a. Integrated new unit members into the unit immediately.</p> <p>b. Assisted soldiers in resolving home-front problems.</p> <p>c. Implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among soldiers and leaders.</p> <p>d. Provided instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel prior to deployment.</p> <p>e. Conducted after-action debriefings.</p> <p>f. Scheduled a critical-event debriefing after any especially traumatic event according to Field Manual (FM) 22-51.</p> <p>g. Conducted unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies.</p> <p>* 5. The commander and leaders implement stress-control techniques.</p> <p>a. Implemented a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases.</p> <p>b. Assigned soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks.</p> <p>c. Directed personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers.</p> <p>d. Referred soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to the supporting medical treatment facility (MTF) for evaluation.</p> <p>e. Reintegrated return-to-duty (RTD) soldiers into their specific element.</p> <p>6. Unit personnel employ stress-prevention measures.</p> <p>a. Maintained a positive attitude concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities.</p> <p>b. Complied with the commander's sleep plan.</p> <p>c. Identified other soldiers with signs of stress or BF.</p> <p>d. Provided immediate buddy-aid support.</p> <p>e. Reported signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to their immediate supervisor.</p> <p>f. Accepted new unit members immediately.</p> <p>g. Practiced relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places.</p> <p>h. Participated in buddy systems and after-action debriefings.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

**TASK:** Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-10) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)  
 (AR 40-5) (FM 21-10-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Health hazards exist, which require field sanitation measures. The unit is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The commander has selected and trained the unit's field sanitation team (FST). The combat-health-support (CHS) plan, the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP), and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Field sanitation measures are accomplished according to the TSOP, the OPORD, and Field Manual (FM) 21-10. The FST performs field sanitation measures according to the TSOP, FM 21-10, FM 21-10-1, and the commander's guidance. At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4, only minimum-essential field sanitation activities are performed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander directs field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed field sanitation activities to counter the medical threat.</li> <li>b. Monitored field sanitation activities for compliance with FM 21-10, FM 21-10-1, and the TSOP.</li> <li>c. Enforced individual field sanitation measures.</li> <li>d. Requested assistance from the supporting preventive medicine (PVNTMED) element for sanitation problems that were beyond the expertise of the unit's FST according to the TSOP and the OPORD.</li> <li>e. Corrected field sanitation deficiencies.</li> <li>f. Reported field sanitation deficiencies that could not be corrected by unit personnel to the FST.</li> <li>g. Enforced safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10 and the TSOP.</li> <li>h. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The FST supervises unit field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained field sanitation basic load according to AR 40-5 and FM 21-10-1.</li> <li>b. Supervised the distribution of field sanitation basic load items according to AR 40-5 and FM 21-10-1.</li> <li>c. Tested the unit's water supply for required chlorine residual level according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP.</li> <li>d. Inspected the water containers and trailers according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Monitored personnel to ensure that they used personal protective measures against arthropods (skin, clothing, and bed-net repellent) and rodents according to applicable directives and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>f. Conducted rodent surveys, as required.</li> <li>g. Monitored personnel for employment of correct hygiene measures.</li> <li>h. Monitored waste facilities and procedures for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 21-10-1, and the TSOP, as required.</li> <li>i. Inspected latrines and urinals according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP.</li> <li>j. Inspected liquid and solid waste-disposal facilities to ensure their compliance with AR 40-5, FM 21-10-1, and the TSOP.</li> <li>k. Inspected hand-washing devices according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP.</li> <li>l. Inspected the transport, storage, preparation, and service of food for compliance with FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP.</li> <li>m. Provided advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander.</li> <li>n. Enforced safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TSOP.</li> <li>o. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel employ field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the prescribed load of water purification materials according to AR 40-5, FM 21-10, and the TSOP.</li> <li>b. Prepared nonpotable water for personal use according to FM 21-10 and the TSOP.</li> <li>c. Consumed only water designated as potable.</li> <li>d. Maintained latrines and hand-washing facilities according to FM 21-10 and the TSOP.</li> <li>e. Employed preventive measures against cold and heat injuries.</li> <li>f. Employed personal-hygiene measures.</li> <li>g. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing, and bed-net repellent.</li> <li>h. Reported field sanitation deficiencies to the FST.</li> <li>i. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TSOP.</li> <li>j. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-053-35-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-64) (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has sustained fatalities. The tactical situation permits GRREG operations to be performed. Some remains may be contaminated. The tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. There are no GRREG personnel available; nonmortuary affairs personnel perform the task. The theater commander has authorized emergency burials. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational.

**NOTE:** Only those tasks deemed mission-essential by the commander are performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company either recovers the killed in action (KIA) and evacuates them to a designated mortuary-affair collection point or performs an emergency burial. Personal possessions are not lost. Locations of the emergency graves are recorded and reported to higher headquarters (HQ). Digital units send reports and locations via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. These activities are curtailed in MOPP 4. The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander designates a search-and-recovery team.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a team leader.</li> <li>b. Issued guidance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The search-and-recovery team leader prepares for the search.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a map or an aerial reconnaissance of the search area.</li> <li>b. Identified additional support requirements.</li> <li>c. Requested additional support requirements from higher HQ.</li> <li>d. Identified the search pattern to be used.</li> <li>e. Coordinated nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) and explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) assistance with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Coordinated area security with higher HQ.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises the search-and-recovery and the evacuation operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the search-and-recovery team on the operational procedures.</li> <li>b. Issued personal effects bags, human remains pouches, if available, and NBC-agent tags.</li> <li>c. Assigned the search area.</li> <li>d. Monitored the search-and-recovery team operations for compliance with the TSOP and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>e. Coordinated evacuation operations with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to higher HQ according to the TSOP.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The search-and-recovery team conducts the search.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked the area immediately for mines or booby traps.</li> <li>b. Searched the assigned areas for remains and personal effects.</li> <li>c. Marked the terrain location of the remains with pegs.</li> <li>d. Collected all disassociated personal effects.</li> <li>e. Recorded the eight-digit grid coordinates of the recovery site.</li> </ul> <p>5. The search-and-recovery team recovers remains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established tentative identification.</li> <li>b. Attached the NBC tag or a tag marked with a large C to the contaminated and contagious remains.</li> <li>c. Attached personal effects to the remains.</li> <li>d. Shrouded the remains with available materials.</li> <li>e. Prepared a recovery-site sketch of the recovery site.</li> <li>f. Prepared a map overlay of the recovery site.</li> </ul> <p>6. The search-and-recovery team evacuates remains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified that the personal effects were attached to the remains.</li> <li>b. Loaded the remains in ground transportation feet first, in aircraft head first.</li> <li>c. Transported the remains in a covered vehicle or aircraft to a designated mortuary-affair collection point.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the specific burial site.</li> <li>b. Supervised the marking of the grave site.</li> <li>c. Supervised the burying of all recovered remains and their personal effects.</li> </ul> <p>8. The search-and-recovery team performs emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the grave site.</li> <li>b. Placed the remains in the grave.</li> <li>c. Marked all the grave sites.</li> <li>d. Buried the United States, allied, and enemy forces remains with their personal effects in separate grave sites.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

**TASK:** Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-27-1) (FM 10-27-2) (FM 10-500-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Since the normal supply-support transportation is unavailable, supplies and equipment are requested by airdrop. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational.

**NOTE:** An airdrop of supplies and equipment may be preplanned or immediate. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Supplies, equipment, and rigging gear are derigged and recovered. Digital unit send and receive reports, orders, and requests via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The company requests supplies and equipment by airdrop.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the required supplies and equipment.</li> <li>b. Identified the drop zone (DZ).</li> <li>c. Determined the date and time of the airdrop request.</li> <li>d. Forwarded the request for a preplanned or immediate airdrop to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The company commander and the element leaders develop the airdrop supply and equipment receipt plan.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a recovery officer and a safety officer.</li> <li>b. Verified the delivery time and location with the S4.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the survey of the DZ or area of operations (AO) with the pathfinders, the combat-control team (CCT), or the drop-zone support team (DZST), through the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</li> <li>d. Prepared the recovery and alternate plans.</li> <li>e. Identified the number of people, equipment, and vehicles required for the recovery of supplies and equipment.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the transportation and materials-handling-equipment (MHE) support with the S4.</li> <li>g. Briefed personnel on the tactical situation and the recovery and alternative plans.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The company receives supplies and equipment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured the DZ or AO.</li> <li>b. Derigged the supplies and equipment.</li> <li>c. Recorded shortages.</li> <li>d. Identified the damaged items.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Evacuated the supplies and equipment. f. Retrieved the airdrop rigging equipment. g. Buried or destroyed the airdrop rigging equipment that could not be removed. h. Inspected the DZ to make certain that no serviceable airdrop equipment was left behind. i. Forwarded the airdrop equipment to the nearest collection point or other location as directed by the S4. j. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to the S2 or S3 and the S4.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A)  
(DA PAM 710-2-1) (AR 710-2) (FM 3-4)  
(FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company headquarters (HQ) is receiving requests for supplies from subordinate elements. The equipment and supplies are arriving through supply channels, but additional supplies may be required. Extra small arms and ammunition are stored in the supply area. The unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and the battalion's operation order (OPORD) is available. The supply area has been established and supply support is a continuous task that is performed simultaneously with other support and operational tasks. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The equipment and supplies are distributed without interfering with mission requirements as established by the TSOP and the OPORD. At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4, unit supply support is reduced to the minimum essential actions. Digital units have the capability to request supply support via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means according to the unit's TSOP. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander directs unit supply operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the supply records and status to ensure compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TSOP.</li> <li>b. Directed inventories of the supplies and equipment to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Inspected the unit's equipment, weapons, and ammunition storage areas for compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TSOP.</li> <li>d. Directed the issue of supplies and equipment according to the battalion's guidance and the TSOP or both sustainment controls.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The supply sergeant supervises unit supply operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected supply status to determine total assets.</li> <li>b. Conducted inventories to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Developed the supply storage plans.</li> <li>d. Monitored supply transactions to ensure compliance with established supply procedures.</li> <li>e. Supervised the control of weapons and ammunition.</li> <li>f. Prepared input to the material-condition status reports (MCSR).</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Supply personnel request additional supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated requirements with the elements.</li> <li>b. Calculated resupply requirements.</li> <li>c. Recorded requests on the appropriate document register.</li> <li>d. Forwarded resupply requests to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Supply personnel receive supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected incoming supplies for quantity and condition.</li> <li>b. Recorded receipt of supplies on the appropriate document register.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Stored supplies according to the storage plans. d. Notified the requesting element of the availability of supplies for issue.  5. Supply personnel issue supplies. a. Processed the supply requests according to appropriate regulations, directives, and the TSOP. b. Prepared the transaction documents according to appropriate regulations, directives, and the TSOP. c. Issued supplies as prescribed in the commander's guidance. d. Maintained prescribed copies of the transactions according to appropriate regulations and directives.  6. Supply personnel maintain small arms and ammunition. a. Controlled stored weapons and ammunition according to appropriate regulations and command policies. b. Requested ammunition resupply from the S4. c. Performed unit-level maintenance on small arms. d. Forwarded weapons beyond organizational repair capabilities to the support maintenance elements.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

**TASK:** Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-19) (TC 24-20) (TM 11-3895-203-15)  
 (TM 11-5805-262-12) (TM 11-5805-294-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and a briefing on the size and shape of the facility or supported command post (CP), the location of each element, the required instruments, and the installation priority. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The internal communications network is set up according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) or the commander's guidance, and is operational by the time specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The section leader prepares a telephone cable or wire installation plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a wire route (based on a map study) that met the requirements of the tactical situation and was easy to construct and maintain.</li> <li>b. Selected the most direct primary and alternate wire routes after conducting a ground reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Prepared an interim plan indicating the routes of the wire lines.</li> <li>d. Allocated the manpower and materials to accomplish the task.</li> <li>e. Prepared a telephone-traffic diagram showing the number of telephone circuits in the communications system.</li> <li>f. Prepared a telephone directory according to the signal operation instructions (SOI) or the standing signal instructions (SSI). Included the names and numbers of the telephone-system users.</li> </ul> <p>2. The section installs a telephone switchboard (SB).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the equipment for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and the appropriate technical manual (TM). Used the end-item list if no packing list was available.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, packing box, or ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from the elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the SB on its side with the nameplate up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment using proper grounding techniques according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>e. Performed SB preoperation procedures according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>f. Labeled the SB according to the traffic diagram.</li> <li>g. Connected the local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ul> <p>3. The section installs internal wiring and telephones.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Installed the distribution box.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Tested the field cable or wire before installing. c. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the communications section leader. d. Secured the field wire at all the starting points and at any changes of direction to reduce the strain. e. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points. f. Tagged the wire ties. g. Used the terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment. h. Ensured that all overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads. i. Finished the line-route map indicating the routes of wire lines, SBs, switching centrals, and test stations; the number of circuits along a route; and the type of wire construction.  4. The section operates the telephone SB. a. Tested the SB to ensure that it was operational. b. Used the turning hand-ringing generator on the telephone (TA 312/PT) to terminate and ring off circuits as they became available to called parties. c. Processed calls. d. Updated the traffic diagram, as required. e. Performed operator preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the SB according to the appropriate TM.  5. The section performs PMCS on the field cable or wire lines. a. Maintained a 20-percent slack in the field cable or wire lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-5710.00-0001	Place a Telephone Set, TA-312/PT or TA-1/PT, into Operation	STP 21-II-MQS
01-5711.02-0001	Install Hot Loop with Telephone TA-312/PT	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
03-3711.12-0002	Protect Classified Information and Material	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**



## **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

**TASK:** Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.40) (AR 190-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates EPWs according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T). Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element searches the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed the weapons and the documents that had intelligence value.</li> <li>b. Returned the personal items of no military-intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment.</li> <li>c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property taken.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The element segregates the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, deserters, civilians, nationality, and ideology, when possible.</li> <li>b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The element silences the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevented the EPWs leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>b. Prevented the EPWs from planning escape.</li> <li>c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The element safeguards the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</li> <li>b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Treated the EPWs humanely.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>b. Attached Part A to the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Retained Part B for the unit records.</li> <li>d. Attached Part C to the property.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs.</li> <li>b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point.</li> <li>c. Exploited the intelligence information.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Report Engineer Information (05-1-0026)  
(FM 5-100) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer battalion is conducting continuous operations. The battalion's tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and in a secure area. The TOC is transferring engineer information to other elements (higher headquarters [HQ] and adjacent and subordinate units). Digital units have performed functionality checks, all digital systems are operational providing information on the common operational picture (COP) and maintaining situational awareness (SA). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Higher HQ and adjacent and subordinate units have continuous, accurate, and timely engineer information that will have an impact on their operations. Digital units are sending and receiving reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. All reports sent via digital means must also be followed up with the appropriate Department of the Army (DA) forms according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) and Standardization Agreement (STANAG). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The battalion TOC (Intelligence Officer [US Army] [S2] or Operations and Training Officer [US Army] [S3]) receives engineer information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged information in a message log on the Maneuver Control System (MCS).</li> <li>b. Requested clarification of information received from the submitting element.</li> <li>c. Maintained a file copy of all hard-copy reports.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The S2 or S3 analyzes the information received and disseminates it to the appropriate action element within the battalion TOC.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminated the personnel and administration information to the Adjutant (US Army) (S1) utilizing the MCS.</li> <li>b. Disseminated the intelligence and weather information to the S2.</li> <li>c. Disseminated the operations and maneuver information to the S3.</li> <li>d. Disseminated the logistics and maintenance information to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) utilizing the MCS.</li> <li>e. Disseminated the command-related information (guidance, tactical decisions, and critical resources) to the command group commanding officer (CO) or executive officer (XO).</li> <li>f. Disseminated the information according to the battalion's standing operating procedure (SOP) to action elements utilizing the reporting procedures on the MCS.</li> <li>g. Disseminated the information copies to other elements, as required.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The action element(s) analyzes information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the content validity and filtered out noncritical (nonessential) information.</li> <li>b. Determined the importance of the information to the operation.</li> <li>c. Determined the required actions, coordination, and reports.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The action element(s) acts on the information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted required coordination with engineer and maneuver elements.</li> <li>b. Updated digital overlays, records, status boards, and logs on the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and the MCS.</li> <li>c. Determined the course of action (COA).</li> <li>d. Selected the COA.</li> <li>e. Obtained guidance or concurrence on the selected COA from relevant elements and the command group, when needed.</li> <li>f. Implemented the COA.</li> <li>g. Prepared required reports according to the battalion's SOP.</li> <li>h. Provided the S2 or S3 with an action summary and all appropriate reports according to the battalion's SOP.</li> </ul> <p>5. The S2 or S3 prepares and submits reports and engineer information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the reports for transmission to subordinate elements and the battalion staff; transmitted/submitted the reports according to the battalion's SOP utilizing the MCS.</li> <li>b. Prepared and transmitted/submitted reports to higher HQ, supported maneuver command, and adjacent elements according to higher HQ's SOP utilizing the MCS.</li> <li>c. Updated digital overlays, records, status boards, and logs, on the MCS, as required.</li> <li>d. Submitted reports to the appropriate elements and HQ utilizing the MCS.</li> <li>e. Logged the submission/transmission of the report/information.</li> <li>f. Updated the command group utilizing the MCS or mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal (MSRT) as required.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
S1-9060.00-3000	Conduct Company and Battalion Operations According to the Laws of War	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Observation or fields of fire. Analyzed the impact of observation or fields of fire on obstacle placement (both friendly and enemy). Determined what items, buildings, and/or vegetation needed to be cleared to improve observation.</p> <p>(2) Cover and concealment. Identified concealed locations for engineer equipment and materials, especially during breaching and river-crossing operations. Identified possible combat trails offering cover and concealment from enemy ground, air, and satellite surveillance.</p> <p>(3) Obstacles. Identified existing, natural, and man-made obstacles and their impact on maneuver, avenues of approach, and the placement of reinforcing obstacles. Evaluated these with respect to friendly and enemy maneuver and the type of unit.</p> <p>(4) Key or decisive terrain. Determined potential engineer tasks required to facilitate friendly control and/or deny enemy control.</p> <p>(5) Avenues of approach. Identified friendly and enemy mobility corridors and avenues of approach based on the unit. Evaluated engineer actions to enhance or hinder movement on these avenues of approach.</p> <p>d. Identified other characteristics important to the engineer plan.</p> <p>e. Coordinated with the supported unit's Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) to develop the enemy situation by providing input about the enemy's engineer capability.</p> <p>(1) Estimated the strength of the enemy's engineer units, including any information (confirmed, suspected, or based on doctrinal techniques) concerning reinforcement to organic enemy engineers from higher enemy echelons.</p> <p>(2) Determined the location of the enemy's engineer units and other units having engineer-related capability, including helicopters and artillery units with remotely delivered mine capability.</p> <p>(3) Assessed the enemy's capabilities for breaching, gap crossing, obstacle emplacement, survivability, and emplacement of remotely delivered mines from aircraft or artillery.</p> <p>(4) Evaluated current significant activities, including engineer battlefield tactics and techniques, to identify weaknesses and strengths.</p> <p>(5) Predicted the possible and most likely COAs by the enemy and the impact of the enemy engineer situation on these COAs.</p> <p>(6) Created templates of the location of enemy obstacles (to include scatterable minefields) based on available intelligence and doctrinal templates.</p> <p>(7) Created templates of the location of the enemy's engineer assets within the enemy's formation for offensive operations.</p> <p>f. Evaluated his own situation.</p> <p>(1) Identified the present disposition of major tactical elements, possible COAs, and current and projected operations.</p> <p>(2) Identified the disposition of logistics units and facilities supporting engineer operations, levels of engineer Class IV and Class V items, and the availability of transportation assets.</p> <p>(3) Identified the present disposition and capabilities of the elements, and estimated the completion times of the current tasks and the combat-support units required to assist with engineer tasks (especially scatterable mines).</p> <p>* 3. The element leader develops at least two separate COAs to accomplish the mission, or develops an engineer plan as part of each COA under development by the maneuver force.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Identified all tasks and the necessary resources to accomplish them for each location or each supported unit. Calculated counter mobility capabilities based on the platoon, the time available, and unit planning factors (used planning factors in Field Manual [FM] 20-32, only if unit planning factors were unknown). Included the use of scatterable-mine laying systems in capability calculations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Computed blade hours using known data. If actual data was not available, used planning factors in FM 5-34, FM 5-102, or FM 5-103.</li> <li>(2) Computed the element hours.</li> <li>(3) Identified any unique or special equipment requirements.</li> <li>(4) Identified supply requirements by class of supply and specific items.</li> </ol> <p>b. Determined priorities for tasks based on guidance received from the higher commander.</p> <p>c. Allocated engineer forces to--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Meet the guidance of the higher commander.</li> <li>(2) Accomplish all tasks.</li> <li>(3) Employ assets efficiently with no wasted squad or equipment time.</li> </ol> <p>* 4. The element leader analyzes each COA.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. War-gamed the engineer plan for each COA against the anticipated enemy actions and reactions. Evaluated the plan against the significant factors impacting on it.</li> <li>b. Determined shortfalls by comparing resource requirements with available assets.</li> <li>c. Reduced shortfalls by establishing priorities, sequencing activities, selecting alternate methods, and altering the engineer plan as necessary, until the requirement was within plus or minus 10 percent of available resources.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: If the engineer plan cannot meet the minimum critical maneuver requirements, then it is not feasible and the plan is invalid. The commander must recognize this and formulate a new plan, starting with Subtask 3.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader compares each COA and selects the one to best accomplish the mission.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the selection technique to use in the comparison.</li> <li>b. Used the significant factors identified in Subtask 3a.</li> <li>c. Selected the best COA based on subjective judgment along with numerical techniques.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: The commander may use numerical factors in his selection technique; however, the final decision is not based solely on simple mathematics.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader states his decision to his subordinates.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the company's task organization and allocated resources.</li> <li>b. Summarized resource requirements by element hours, equipment, and logistics, for each location or each supported unit.</li> <li>c. Assigned each task to a subordinate element.</li> </ol> <p>* 7. The element leader recommends a COA to the supported maneuver commander.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stated which COA can best be supported from the engineer perspective.</li> <li>b. Identified major deficiencies that the maneuver commander must remedy, including recommendations for eliminating or reducing them.</li> <li>c. Recommended the command or support relationships and task organization as necessary, tasks to be directed to subordinate elements, and priorities for engineer support.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP BREACHER

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Prepare an Engineer Annex (05-2-0003)  
(FM 101-5) (FM 5-100) (FM 5-71-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company is supporting a maneuver force in a tactical operation. The company commander is the force engineer and must prepare an engineer annex as part of the supported unit's operation order (OPORD). Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The annex contains the essential information needed to support the maneuver commander's operation. The annex's concept is clear and understood by the maneuver force. Digital units send orders and reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader selects an annex format based on the amount and type of information it will contain, the time available to produce it, and guidance received from the maneuver unit's Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). He uses any combination of the following formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. A written annex using the basic five-paragraph order format.</li> <li>b. Situational awareness (SA) overlays of existing and proposed friendly obstacles and their control measures (belts, zones, restricted areas, lanes, or gaps); known and templated enemy obstacles; and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC)-contaminated areas.</li> <li>c. An obstacle list containing all of the obstacles.</li> <li>d. Engineer execution matrixes of all identified engineer tasks, all identified logistic and coordination requirements, and marginal notes to cover any other needed information.</li> </ul> <p>2. The engineer company ensures that the annex meets the correct criteria.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that information from the estimate process was applied.</li> <li>b. Verified that it contained any information related to the engineer plan that was not covered elsewhere in the order.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The annex may contain information already present in the parent order if it is necessary for clarity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Ensured that it did not contain items covered in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP); however, it may have referenced the SOP.</li> <li>d. Ensured that it was directed to the major subordinate elements of the maneuver unit, not just the engineers.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The engineer annex is not the engineer unit's OPORD. It covers the entire engineer plan, not just the part pertaining to engineer units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Ensured that it was clear, complete, brief, timely, avoided qualified directives, did not contain irrelevant information, and was issued with the OPORD.</li> <li>f. Ensured that it was integrated with the other parts of the OPORD. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Coordinated all tasks directed to units other than engineers before issuing the annex.</li> <li>(2) Coordinated all details with the appropriate battle-staff element.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The company commander prepares the annex using the written five-paragraph order format.</p> <p>a. SITUATION.</p> <p>(1) Enemy Forces. Identified aspects significantly impacting engineer operations, including terrain, weather, and enemy engineer capability.</p> <p>(2) Friendly Forces. Identified the designation, location, and activities of higher and adjacent engineers. Described other elements capable of assisting with the engineer plan.</p> <p>NOTE: Nonengineer units with scatterable-mine emplacement capability (Artillery, Army Aviation, and Air Force) are identified here.</p> <p>(3) Attachments and Detachments. Included only if needed for clarity.</p> <p>b. MISSION. Stated the mission of engineers in support of the base OPORD.</p> <p>c. EXECUTION.</p> <p>(1) Scheme of engineer operations (SOEO).</p> <p>(a) Contained a brief statement of the concept of the engineer plan, including the priority of engineer support to subordinate elements. The statement was precise and specific.</p> <p>(b) Obstacles. Identified individual obstacles and obstacle groups, the type (reserved or preliminary), authorized commander (for reserved obstacles), and subordinate-unit obstacle responsibilities, as appropriate. Referred to an overlay and obstacle table.</p> <p>(c) Scatterable mines. Explained the employment concept, the authority for long and short self-destruct (by system), other requirements or limitations, and the allocation to subordinate elements, as appropriate. Identified nonengineer units responsible for emplacing scatterable mines.</p> <p>(2) Task to subordinate units. Identified tasks for subordinate maneuver units, engineers under the direct control of the issuing headquarters (HQ), and other elements assigned engineer tasks by the maneuver commander.</p> <p>(3) Coordinating instructions, as necessary. Ensured that the measures and reporting procedures applying to two or more subordinate units were completed.</p> <p>d. SERVICE SUPPORT. Contained logistic information affecting the engineer plan, specifically Class IV or Class V supplies and transportation. Identified available host-nation assets and their location. Identified allocations and priorities for command-regulated items.</p> <p>(1) Command-regulated classes of supply.</p> <p>(2) Class IV and Class V supplies distribution plan.</p> <p>(3) Transportation.</p> <p>(4) Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</p> <p>(5) Civil-military operations.</p> <p>e. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.</p> <p>(1) Command. Contained the location of engineer command posts. Special command arrangements.</p> <p>(2) Signal. Listed the specific signal operation instructions (SOI) index used by engineer elements; identified the call sign and the frequency of supporting units from another HQ. Identified any alternate means of communications for engineer missions such as target demolition and lane closure. Provided instructions for coordinating and establishing communications.</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Establish a Command Post (CP) (05-2-0064)  
 (FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company advance or quartering party has secured a new area. The company staff sections have assigned personnel to establish the forward CP. The advance-party element is part of the headquarters (HQ) company's advance or quartering party. The tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP), with the advance element's duties, is available. The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) section has provided instructions relating to the preparation of the CP site. Communication requirements have been determined and requested. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Command and control (C2) of company sustainment operations continues during the company HQ's "jump" to a new location. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The advance-party element establishes the forward CP.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned the vehicles, tentage, and equipment to be used according to the layout plan.</li> <li>b. Set up internal arrangement to permit immediate access to all required information.</li> <li>c. Set up maps and overlays that displayed the locations of the proponent's facilities.</li> <li>d. Constructed barriers around the forward CP as prescribed by the TSOP.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The advance-party element provides staff supervision over forward tactical operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided staff supervision over the establishment of the CP area to ensure compliance with the layout plan and the TSOP.</li> <li>b. Established communications with higher headquarters (HQ) and adjacent and subordinate units as prescribed by the movement order and the TSOP.</li> <li>c. Provided movement assistance to subordinate units that were out of the range of the rear CP communications.</li> <li>d. Maintained situational-awareness (SA) overlays with the current disposition of friendly and enemy units.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The advance-party element provides staff supervision over forward proponent support operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained current updated reports of all proponent assets.</li> <li>b. Maintained current updated reports of the availability of proponent assets.</li> <li>c. Maintained SA overlays with current friendly facilities in the company's area of responsibility.</li> <li>d. Maintained current customer listings.</li> <li>e. Maintained current staff files and journals.</li> <li>f. Relayed operational information from customer units to the rear company HQ that affected the proponent support operations.</li> <li>g. Provided current operations briefings to the S2, the S3, and respective staff sections upon the arrival of the main body.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1M</b>	<b>2M</b>	<b>3M</b>	<b>4M</b>	<b>5M</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 COMPANY

**TASK:** Integrate Engineer Elements into the Maneuver Staff (05-2-0300)  
 (FM 5-71-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The task force (TF) is in continuous operations under daylight or darkness. Engineer elements have been received from higher headquarters (HQ) to support TF operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Engineer elements must be integrated into the TF's scheme of maneuver according to the commander's intent and must synchronize the engineer effort in conjunction with other battlefield operating systems (BOS). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The TF engineer advises the TF commander on the use and employment of engineer assets. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed the mission analysis and recommended the task organization.</li> <li>b. Recommended a command or support relationship.</li> <li>c. Sent the warning order (WO) to subordinate units.</li> <li>d. Participated in the staff orders process, ensuring that the engineers were integrated into the process for fire support (FS), reconnaissance and surveillance (R&amp;S), and the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).</li> <li>e. Briefed subordinate leaders on the scheme of maneuver and the commander's intent.</li> <li>f. Monitored engineer activities and made recommendations, as necessary.</li> </ul> * 2. The leaders prepare the units for movement and linkup operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed and conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>b. Reviewed drills and orders.</li> </ul> 3. The elements prepare for combat operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Participated in the combined-arms reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Participated in combined-arms rehearsals.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
COMPANY

**TASK:** Integrate Obstacles into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans (05-2-0314)  
(FM 90-7) (FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) that is planning for defensive operations. The TF commander has received guidance. Obstacles and direct- and indirect-fire plans have been approved. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The integration plan supports the TF commander's scheme of maneuver. Obstacles must be integrated with direct and indirect fires to achieve the desired effect on the enemy. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander or the executive officer (XO) assists in the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) process.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the terrain to identify assembly areas (AAs) and maneuver controls (MCs).</li> <li>b. Determined the size of the enemy force that each AA could support.</li> <li>c. Determined where the enemy was vulnerable.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander decides how he wants to use obstacles to support the scheme of maneuver. At TF level, obstacle intent identifies the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Target. Identified the size of the unit that the obstacles were targeting.</li> <li>b. Obstacle effect. Ensured that subordinate units knew the desired obstacle effect (disrupt, turn, fix, or block).</li> <li>c. Relative location.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The commander or the XO ensures that fire support (FS) targets are planned to support the obstacle plan.</li> <li>* 4. The commander or the XO ensures that adequate direct-fire systems, based on the target of the obstacles, are resourced to overwatch the obstacles.</li> <li>* 5. The platoon leader coordinates with supported units to site obstacles for coverage by direct-fire systems.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined or refined the target reference points (TRPs) to synchronize direct and indirect fires.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the enemy could be effected in the desired manner.</li> <li>c. Coordinated for target turnover.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

**TASK:** Conduct Report Procedures (05-2-1218)  
 (FM 24-1) (FM 24-18) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)  
 (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11) (FM 34-45)  
 (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An element is conducting combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element submits reports, such as operational occurrence reports, spot reports (SPOTREPs), and shelling reports (SHELREPs) to higher headquarters (HQ) in a timely manner. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2). Reports should be in the correct format, as shown in this task, in the appropriate field manual (FM), or in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The leaders submit the SPOTREP to higher HQ as required by the unit's SOP or the situation. The leaders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the SPOTREP included the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE).</li> <li>b. Dispatched the SPOTREP by the fastest means available; in a tactical situation, dispatched the SPOTREP within 5 minutes of receipt of the information. When necessary, the leaders submitted a partial report within the time constraints and updated it as additional information became available.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The leaders submit the SHELREP, the mortar bombing report (MORTREP), and the bombing report (BOMREP) to the next higher HQ. The leaders--</p> <p>NOTE: The reports should include the following: The originating unit; the observer position; the direction; the time that the shelling began; the time that the shelling ended; the area that was bombed, shelled, rocketed, or mortared; the number and the nature of weapons and aircraft; the nature of fire (direct or indirect); the number, type, and caliber of shells, rockets, bombs, or mortar rounds; and the flash-to-bang time, the damage, and the angle of the fall or the descent, as the time and the conditions permit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted the report within 30 minutes following the activity or consistent with the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Submitted the report, even if it contained incomplete information.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the encryption conformed to the signal operation instructions (SOI).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) submits a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) report to the net control station (NCS) within 10 minutes of notification of the activity. The report contains the following information:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Item 1, the MIJI. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the numerals 022.</li> <li>b. Item 2, the type of interference. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the following numerals for the interference: meaconing - 1, intrusion - 2, jamming - 3, interference - 4.</li> <li>c. Item 3, the instrument affected. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the following numerals for the instrument affected: radio - 1, radar - 2, navigational aid - 3, satellite - 4, electro optics - 5.</li> <li>d. Item 4, the frequency or the channel affected. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the affected frequency.</li> <li>e. Item 5, complete the call sign of the affected station operator (for secure and nonsecure communications).</li> <li>f. Item 6, complete the grid coordinates of the affected station. When transmitting by nonsecure means, encrypt the coordinates.</li> </ol> <p>* 4. The leaders submit all operational occurrence reports as soon as the tactical situation permits. The leaders submit information on the--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Line of departure (LD) crossing</li> <li>b. Checkpoint arrival times.</li> <li>c. Rally point (RP) arrival time.</li> <li>d. Logistics report.</li> <li>e. Intelligence report.</li> </ol> <p>* 5. The leaders submit both verbal and written patrol reports as required by Standardization Agreement (STANAG) 2003. The report includes--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The designation of the patrol.</li> <li>b. The date.</li> <li>c. The unit receiving the report.</li> <li>d. The name of the person submitting the report.</li> <li>e. The size and composition of the patrol.</li> <li>f. The mission.</li> <li>g. The departure and return times.</li> <li>h. The routes out and back.</li> <li>i. A terrain description, to include the-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Type of terrain, such as dry, swamp, jungle, thickly wooded, high brush, or rocky.</li> <li>(2) Deepness of the ravines and the draws.</li> <li>(3) Size, type, strength, and condition of the bridges.</li> <li>(4) Effect on armored and wheeled vehicles.</li> </ol> </li> <li>j. Data on the enemy, to include the-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Strength.</li> <li>(2) Disposition.</li> <li>(3) Condition of the defense.</li> <li>(4) Equipment and weapons.</li> <li>(5) Morale of the personnel.</li> <li>(6) Exact location.</li> <li>(7) Shift in disposition.</li> <li>(8) Time that the activity was observed and the coordinates where the activity occurred.</li> </ol> </li> <li>k. Any map corrections.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>l. Any miscellaneous information, including aspects of nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) warfare.</p> <p>m. The outcome of previous enemy encounters, to include the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy prisoners and their disposition.</li> <li>(2) Identification of enemy personnel.</li> <li>(3) Enemy casualties.</li> <li>(4) Captured documents and equipment.</li> </ul> <p>n. The condition of the patrol, including the disposition of the dead or wounded.</p> <p>o. Conclusions and recommendations. Include what was accomplished and any recommendations regarding the patrol equipment and tactics.</p> <p>p. The signature, grade or rank, and organization or unit of the patrol leader.</p> <p>q. Additional remarks by the interrogator and the interrogator's signature.</p> <p>* 6. The leaders submit an NBC 1 report. The leaders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted the initial NBC 1 (within 5 minutes of the activity) and follow-up reports to the unit HQ.</li> <li>b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available (by flash precedence for the initial burst and immediate precedence for subsequent attacks).</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The leaders submit an NBC 4 report. The leaders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted the NBC 4 report to the unit HQ.</li> <li>b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018.05-R01A)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 101-5) (FM 5-71-2)  
 (FM 71-1) (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a mission from a warning order (WO), a fragmentary order (FRAGO), or an operation order (OPORD). Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit leader gives a WO, conducts a leader's reconnaissance, issues an OPORD, and supervises the preparation for the assigned mission within the allotted time. Digital units have the ability to conduct map reconnaissance using the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS). The Army Battle Command System (ABCS) can be used to submit reports and orders to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives the mission in a WO, a FRAGO or an OPORD from its higher headquarters. The element leader determines the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC); the needed supplies and equipment; and special tasks to assign.</li> <li>* 2. The element leader issues a WO to the subordinate leaders. The element leader--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stated the mission (nature of the operation).</li> <li>b. Identified the task organization.</li> <li>c. Stated the time of the operation.</li> <li>d. Gave any special instructions, such as drills to be rehearsed, precombat checks (PCCs), and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>e. Stated the element time line.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader develops a tentative plan while the element prepares for the mission. The element leader--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed the plan based on the METT-TC.</li> <li>b. Planned the available time using the reverse-planning process.</li> <li>c. Used no more than one-third of the available time, leaving the remainder for subordinate element preparation.</li> <li>d. Ensured that subordinate leaders began the PCCs and reconfigured equipment based on the mission. Subordinate leaders checked rations, water, weapons, ammunition, individual uniforms and equipment, mission-essential equipment, and the individual soldier's knowledge of the mission.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The element continues assembly-area activities and security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained equipment and weapons.</li> <li>b. Conducted personal hygiene.</li> <li>c. Resupplied the equipment and materials, to include small-arms ammunition, demolitions, mines, and the refueling of the vehicles.</li> <li>d. Rehearsed battle and crew drills.</li> <li>e. Conducted weapon test firing (if possible).</li> <li>f. Ate and rested.</li> <li>g. Maintained security.</li> </ul> <p>5. The element begins movement. The element leader initiates movement before completing the plan. The subordinate leader moves the element in the absence of the element leader.</p> <p>NOTE: This task step may be omitted, occur in a different sequence, or be done concurrently with another task step.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader conducts a reconnaissance. The element leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a map reconnaissance as a minimum. (When practical, the subordinate leaders participated in the reconnaissance.)</li> <li>b. Conducted a ground reconnaissance (usually as part of a larger force). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included as many subordinate leaders as practical.</li> <li>(2) Identified the critical areas to the mission.</li> <li>(3) Moved as far forward as the time and the situation permitted.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 7. The element leader completes the plan. The element leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the map or ground reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the available equipment, personnel, and material.</li> <li>c. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the intelligence gained by reconnaissance assets.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The element leader verbally issues the completed order, in a FRAGO or an OPORD format, to the subordinate leaders and to the attached leaders. The order contains the following information:</p> <p>NOTE: The order may be given to the entire element at the same time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. SITUATION. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy forces.</li> <li>(2) Friendly forces.</li> <li>(3) Attachments and detachments.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. MISSION.</li> <li>c. EXECUTION. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Concept of the operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>(b) Fires.</li> <li>(c) Reconnaissance and surveillance.</li> <li>(d) Intelligence.</li> <li>(e) Engineer support.</li> <li>(f) Air defense.</li> <li>(g) Information operations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Subunit tasks.</li> <li>(3) Coordinating instructions. At a minimum the element leader must address the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Time or condition when the plan or order becomes effective.</li> <li>(b) Commander's critical-information requirements (CCIR).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(c) Risk-reduction control measures.</p> <p>NOTE: The element leader determined the risk-reduction control measures by using the 5 steps of the risk-management process. For additional information, the element leader referred to Field Manual (FM) 101-5.</p> <p>(d) Rules of engagement.</p> <p>(e) Environmental considerations.</p> <p>(f) Force protection.</p> <p>d. SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <p>(1) Support concept.</p> <p>(2) Materials and services.</p> <p>(3) Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</p> <p>(4) Personnel.</p> <p>(5) Civil Military.</p> <p>e. COMMAND and SIGNAL.</p> <p>(1) Command.</p> <p>(a) The location of the element leadership, support-element leadership, and the command posts for the operation.</p> <p>(b) Succession of command. (If not stated in the element's standing operating procedure [SOP] or tactical standing operating procedure [TACSOP]).</p> <p>(2) Signal.</p> <p>(a) Signal operation instructions (SOI) in effect.</p> <p>(b) Radio communication restrictions.</p> <p>(c) Visual and pyrotechnic signals.</p> <p>(d) Code words and reports specific to the operation.</p> <p>(e) Communications security (COMSEC) guidelines and procedures.</p> <p>* 9. The subordinate leaders complete the PCCs. The element leaders conduct the PCIs.</p> <p>NOTE: Subordinate leaders can conduct the PCCs on receipt of a WO or a FRAGO. The element should have mission-specific PCC/PCI checklists in the element TACSOP.</p> <p>a. Checked/inventoried equipment and ensured that the items were serviceable and that the elements had everything specified in the element SOP and the items required for the specific mission.</p> <p>b. Ensured that the element had adequate resupply ammunition, food, water, repair parts, fuel, medical supplies, obstacle material, demolitions, and mines.</p> <p>c. Conducted a communications check.</p> <p>d. Ensured that personnel, equipment, and carriers were camouflaged and that the weapons were test fired.</p> <p>e. Questioned personnel to ensure that they understood their task and purpose and that of the element's headquarters.</p> <p>f. Inspected personnel, vehicles, weapons, and equipment just before starting the mission.</p> <p>*10. The leaders of the element conduct at least one type of rehearsal according to FM 101-5.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security	ARTEP 5-025-66-MTP ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP ARTEP 5-155-66-MTP ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP ARTEP 5-215-66-MTP ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP ARTEP 5-445-64-MTP ARTEP 5-445-66-MTP ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP ARTEP 5-463-10-MTP
07-3-4129.05-T01A	Defend a Battle Position	ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP ARTEP 5-053-12-MTP ARTEP 5-053-35-MTP ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP ARTEP 5-113-11-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
		ARTEP 5-113-12-MTP
		ARTEP 5-113-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP
		ARTEP 5-336-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-337-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-413-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-415-66-MTP
		ARTEP 5-416-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-13-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-14-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-17-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-423-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-423-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-424-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-434-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-435-66-MTP
		ARTEP 5-435-67-MTP
		ARTEP 5-436-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-436-37-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-36-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-38-MTP
		ARTEP 5-443-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP
		ARTEP 5-500-21-MTP
		ARTEP 5-500-22-MTP
		ARTEP 5-500-24-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-12-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-16-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-18-MTP
		ARTEP 5-520-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-12-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-13-MTP

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-4129.05-T01D	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION	ARTEP 5-335-60-MTP ARTEP 5-335-65-MTP ARTEP 5-335-70-MTP

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is tactically deployed and must establish the communications network. The operators have been briefed and issued extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the standing signal instructions (SSI), the numerical cipher, the authenticated system, the operations codes, and the brevity lists. Situational hazards such as nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional finding ability exists. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Radio operators install a radio set for operation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured radios in mount.</li> <li>b. Connected audio accessories.</li> <li>c. Installed antennas.</li> <li>d. Performed before-operation preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>e. Performed radio operational checks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Radio operators make initial entry into the nets.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> <li>b. Entered a radio net.</li> <li>c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Radio operators recognize frequency interference.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recognized jamming or interference.</li> <li>b. Determined if the interference was internal or external.</li> <li>c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Radio operators initiate prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued to operate.</li> <li>b. Increased the transmit power.</li> <li>c. Tuned the receiver for max signal.</li> <li>d. Relocated the antenna.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Requested a change of frequency. f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor. g. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder reports.  5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures. a. Used communications security (COMSEC) equipment (secure), if available (transmission security (TSEC)/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57). b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KOI-15. c. Used only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI and/or the SSI. d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI and/or the SSI (not necessary in secure-voice operation). e. Kept the length (not more than 20 seconds per transmission) and the number of transmissions to a minimum. f. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations. g. Used the correct call signs and frequencies. h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. i. Adhered to net discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-5700.01-0002	Determine Call Signs, Frequencies, and Item Numbers	STP 21-II-MQS
01-5700.01-0003	Employ a Numeral Cipher Authentication System	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
		STP 21-I-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MAINTENANCE SECTION  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION  
 COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

**TASK:** Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINGGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A)

(FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-33)

(FM 20-3)  
 (FM 24-35)

(FM 24-18)  
 (FM 24-35-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The team has been briefed and has extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the standing signal instructions (SSI), the appropriate loading devices with keys, a radio-net diagram, maps, and grid coordinates. Subtasks 1 through 4 are done in the motor pool or staging area prior to going to the field location. General condition applies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The SINGGARS radio sets are operational according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and the operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The supervisor checks all radios for completeness and operability.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the vehicular and manpack systems were assembled correctly.</li> </ul> <p>WARNING: High voltages exist at connector J1 on the mounting adapter. Be sure J1 is covered or capped when not in use.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Ensured that the operator logged the amp hours (manpack only).</li> <li>c. Ensured that the preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) were completed.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The supervisor selects the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the primary and the alternate locations within the general site.</li> <li>b. Established and maintained camouflage discipline.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the location provided effective use of the terrain in an electronic warfare (EW) environment.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the location avoided interference from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference.</li> </ul> <p>3. Net members perform pre-mission checks for a SINGGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed before-operation PMCS.</li> <li>b. Loaded the transmission security key (TSK) using MX-10579 or MS-18290 (nonintegrated communications security [non-ICOM] only).</li> <li>c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only).</li> <li>d. Loaded the traffic encryption key (TEK) using KYK-13.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The net control station (NCS) performs pre-mission checks for SINCGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preoperational PMCS.</li> <li>b. Loaded the TSK and the hop set using MX-10579 or MX18290 (non-ICOM only).</li> <li>c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only).</li> <li>d. Loaded the TEK using KYK-13.</li> <li>e. Loaded the FH sync-time according to the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> <li>f. Loaded the cue frequency.</li> <li>g. Directed the alternate NCS to load the cue frequency as required.</li> <li>h. Changed the net identification according to the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> </ol> <p>5. The NCS opens the net.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued the net call in the secure mode on the MAN channel.</li> <li>b. Issued the electronic counter-countermeasures [ECCM] remote fill (ERF) instructions and sent the ERF.</li> <li>c. Set the channel switch to the hop set channel and issued the net call.</li> <li>d. Opened the net.</li> <li>e. Reset the channel switch to MAN and called missing net members.</li> <li>f. Repeated the cold start.</li> <li>g. Set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</li> </ol> <p>6. Net members enter the net.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Responded in the correct sequence to the net call.</li> <li>b. Stored the ERF, set the channel switch to the hop set channel, reset the channel switch to MAN, and set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</li> <li>c. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</li> <li>d. Reset the channel switch to MAN and the FCTN switch to LO if the member missed the ERF or heard no communications on the hop set channel.</li> <li>e. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</li> </ol> <p>7. Net members perform the late net entry (LNE), cue, and ERF method.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed pre-mission checks for a FH cold-start.</li> <li>b. Loaded the cue frequency according to the SOI and/or the SSI.</li> <li>c. Initiated the cue call.</li> <li>d. Reported into the net.</li> <li>e. Switched to the MAN channel and conducted the cold-start net opening.</li> </ol> <p>8. Net members use proper radio procedures.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum.</li> <li>b. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate.</li> <li>c. Used authorized call signs and frequencies.</li> <li>d. Observed periods of radio-listening silence.</li> <li>e. Operated on a random schedule.</li> <li>f. Adhered to net discipline.</li> </ol> <p>9. Team members recognize different types of interference.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked the receiver/transmitter's (RT) signal (SIG) display when it was not transmitting. If the display was constantly or intermittently higher than 1, then the members disconnected the antenna to determine if the interference was internal or external.</li> <li>b. Initiated the ECCM for external symptoms.</li> </ol> <p>10. Team members initiate ECCM actions.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued to operate.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Did not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming in the clear.                      c. Reduced the transmission speed.                      d. Increased the transmitter power.                      e. Relocated the antenna.                      f. Prepared and forwarded a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report to the supervisor in the United States message text format (USMTF).</p> <p>11. Team members extend the range of the radio station.                      a. Inspected the OE-254 for serviceability.                      b. Installed the OE-254 antenna using the team method.                      c. Accomplished the transaction from the whip antenna to the OE-254 without unnecessary interruption of service.</p> <p>12. The retransmission team establishes a retransmission site.                      a. Installed and connected the OE-254 antennas.                      b. Performed preoperational PMCS.                      c. Loaded the CMD NET MAN frequency in radio C.                      d. Loaded the CMD NET MAN and cue frequencies in radio D.                      e. Loaded the TSK and the TEK into both radios (non-ICOM only).                      f. Loaded the hop set and the TEK into both radios (ICOM only).                      g. Cued the LNE using radio D.                      h. Stored the ERF into both radios.                      i. Changed radio D to RTS MAN and cue frequencies and TRS net ID.                      j. Set the FCTN switches of radios C and D to retransmit (RXMT).</p> <p>13. Team members initiate the net radio interface (NRI) call.                      a. Called the NRI operator on the NRI hop set channel, or initiated a cue call on the NCI cue channel as required.                      b. Switched to NRI MAN channel.                      c. Established communications on the NRI hop set channel.                      d. Identified the telephone subscriber by call sign or telephone number.</p> <p>14. Team members maintain the SINGARS radio net.                      a. Performed PMCS, as required.                      b. Performed fault isolation, as required.                      c. Performed user-level maintenance, as required.                      d. Evacuated the faulty equipment, as required.                      e. Completed all of the necessary entries in the maintenance record.                      f. Reported all uncorrected deficiencies to the immediate supervisor.</p> <p>15. The NCS closes the net.                      a. Called the net and issued closedown instructions.                      b. Received acknowledgement in the correct sequence.                      c. Acknowledged the net members.                      d. Performed after-operation PMCS.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

**TASK:** Participate in the Operations Order (OPORD) Process (12-1-0408.05-T01A)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 100-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is engaging in combat operations and has received a mission from higher headquarters (HQ). The battalion commander has issued planning guidance. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel estimate and annex of the OPORD are completed in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section prepares the personnel estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained the commander's restated mission.</li> <li>b. Obtained intelligence information from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</li> <li>c. Obtained tactical information from the commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</li> <li>d. Obtained logistical information from the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> <li>e. Prepared the troop-preparedness situation.</li> <li>f. Analyzed and compared courses of action.</li> <li>g. Developed conclusions.</li> <li>h. Presented conclusions to the commander.</li> </ul> <p>2. The S1 section participates in the preparation process for the service-support annex.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the battalion's task organization.</li> <li>b. Updated task-force battle rosters and personnel strength (PS) charts to reflect the new task organization.</li> <li>c. Advised the commander and staff on task-force PS.</li> <li>d. Developed estimates of injured, sick, and wounded rates.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the location of medical-support facilities and evacuation routes and procedures.</li> <li>f. Provided medical-support information to staff members in support of staff planning.</li> <li>g. Relayed tactical/operational information and command directives to medical-support units.</li> <li>h. Verified casualty data and strength information with the battalion aid station.</li> <li>i. Established requirements and procedures for strength accounting, replacements, and casualty reporting.</li> <li>j. Coordinated and designated temporary enemy prisoner of war (EPW) and civilian-detainee collection points and outlined evacuation procedures.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
k. Prepared the personnel portion of paragraph 4 (Service Support) of the OPORD. l. Briefed task organization and personnel portions of the OPORD.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK:** Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A)  
 (FM 12-6) (FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has resumed combat operations. Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. During operations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level I threat; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Casualty processing and replacement actions continue during lulls in combat operations. The task may occur in a field or military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT) environment. A tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel situation report (SITREP), which accounts for all company personnel, is reported daily or as required. Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The headquarters (HQ) element collects strength-information reports from subordinate sections.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged the SITREP and other personnel information.</li> <li>b. Verified strength data.</li> <li>c. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The HQs element processes information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated the personnel information of subordinate elements.</li> <li>b. Determined critical shortages and cross-leveling requirements.</li> <li>c. Updated the battle roster.</li> <li>d. Prepared hasty personnel status report (PSR) strength reports.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The HQs element processes replacements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed replacements on the mission, the tactical situation, company policies and procedures, specific duties, and site or company orientation.</li> <li>b. Added soldiers' names to the battle roster.</li> <li>c. Inspected critical clothing and equipment for shortages.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the issue of needed items.</li> <li>e. Arranged the movement of replacements to the platoon of assignment.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The first sergeant (1SG) disseminates strength information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the commander on the unit's strength and replacement status.</li> <li>b. Forwarded personnel SITREP or hasty strength reports, casualty feeder reports (Department of the Army [DA] Form 1156), and witness statements (DA Form 1155) to the supporting Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section.</li> <li>c. Informed subordinate sections of projected replacements.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The company commander performs strength-management functions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed cross leveling.</li> <li>b. Verified combat-critical personnel requirements.</li> <li>c. Reviewed strength-management reports.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
d. Spot-checked strength-information processing.		
e. Briefed superiors on the unit's strength and replacement status.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 NINE ENGINEER SQUADS  
 ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS  
 THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS  
 REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

**TASK:** Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A)  
 (FM 22-51) (AR 27-1) (AR 600-15)  
 (AR 608-99) (FM 21-20) (FM 22-9)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is preparing to resume combat operations. During preparations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level 1 threat; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Preparations occur during lulls in combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. The task may occur in a field or military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT) environment. The tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs) are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company follows and applies techniques to counter performance degradation and to enhance combat effectiveness. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means to maintain and inform subordinate units of the common operational picture (COP) and maintain situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander executes actions to keep soldiers informed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations.</li> <li>c. Told the soldiers of the leaders' intentions.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Quelled and prevented rumors.</li> <li>g. Disseminated command information to include the availability of religious support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The company commander or first sergeant (1SG) implements the unit's sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed the unit's sleep plan.</li> <li>b. Provided safe, secure areas away from vehicles and other activities for sleep.</li> <li>c. Provided an opportunity for the maximum number of soldiers to sleep or rest where possible.</li> <li>d. Specified and provided time for leaders to sleep or rest.</li> <li>e. Adjusted the plan to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. All leaders implement task-rotation restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cross-trained soldiers on critical tasks.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Developed plans for the rotation of soldiers between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy, such as mathematical computations (duplicate efforts).</li> <li>* 4. All leaders implement stress-coping and stress-management techniques.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Taught soldiers relaxation techniques prior to deployment.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the unit implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue among soldiers and leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that soldiers used relaxation techniques when needed.</li> <li>d. Facilitated the acceptance of newly arrived soldiers into the unit.</li> <li>e. Reintegrated returned-to-duty, stressed, or battle-fatigued soldiers into the unit.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The company commander or 1SG implements stress-treatment techniques.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a plan to deal with mild and more serious stress or battle-fatigue cases.</li> <li>b. Assigned soldiers who showed signs of stress or battle fatigue to the performance of simpler tasks.</li> <li>c. Ensured that soldiers were supportive in speech and behavior toward soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue.</li> <li>d. Moved stressed or battle-fatigued soldiers (who did not show improvement after resting) to unit trains, supporting units, or medical facilities.</li> <li>e. Referred for medical evaluation or care, those soldiers who had serious signs of stress or battle fatigue or were not recuperating.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 6. The company command group provides morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) support.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented sports programs as the situation allowed.</li> <li>b. Provided hot rations.</li> <li>c. Coordinated postal support.</li> <li>d. Coordinated combat payments.</li> <li>e. Coordinated clothing exchange and bath support.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the issue and sale of soldier comfort, morale, and welfare items.</li> <li>g. Coordinated legal support.</li> <li>h. Advised higher headquarters on the unit's MWR status.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 7. All leaders maintain soldiers' fitness.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored soldiers' fitness.</li> <li>b. Conducted physical training (as the time and combat situation allowed).</li> <li>c. Implemented personal hygiene and field-sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Corrected problem areas.</li> <li>e. Briefed the commander on the soldiers' fitness status.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 8. The company commander administers the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ).               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of reported violations of the UCMJ.</li> <li>b. Administered nonjudicial punishment.</li> <li>c. Forwarded charges for trial by courts-martial.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 9. The company commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other-than-judicial or nonjudicial proceedings.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Counseled soldiers for indebtedness.</li> <li>b. Counseled soldiers for nonsupport of dependents.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
c. Initiated letters of reprimand or admonition. d. Initiated administrative separations.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

## CHAPTER 6

### External Evaluation

6-1. General. An external evaluation evaluates the unit's ability to perform its mission. Using units may modify this evaluation based on the METT-TC and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected T&EOs in Chapter 5 that involve the total unit and employ a realistic OPFOR and the use of the MILES are used for evaluation. At the completion of the evaluation, the commander can identify the strengths and weaknesses of his unit. These strengths and weakness are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit's capabilities. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario that contains the mission as well as the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Figure 6-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. The following procedures are suggested for developing the evaluation:

**Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario**

Event	Action	Estimated Time Allotted	Proposed Time Frame
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations		Prestart
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		
3	Issue a Road March Order	Day 1 - 2 hours	0200 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	5 hours	0400 hours
5	Occupy an Assembly Area	3 hours	0900 hours
<b>Module 1</b>			
6	Receive a Warning Order	2 hours	1200 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)		
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations		
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
10	Conduct Administrative Operations		
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations		
<b>Module 2</b>			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations	Day 2 -	1400 hours
13	Receive a Warning Order		
14	Support Combat Operations (Counter-mobility)		
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
16	Move to an AAR Site and Conduct an AAR		
17	End Exercise (ENDEX)		

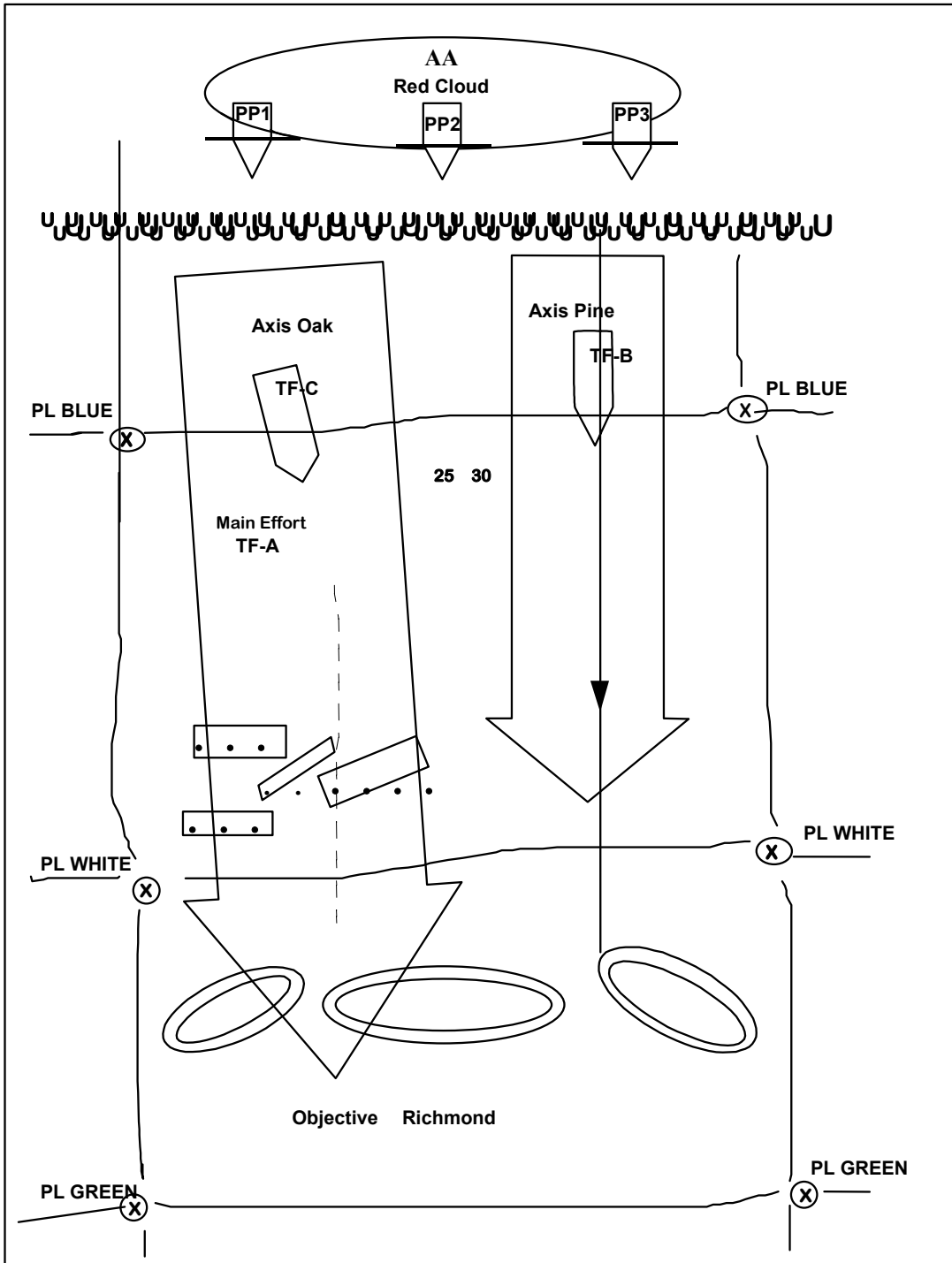


Figure 6-1. General Scenario Illustration

a. Identify the missions to be evaluated for each echelon using Figure 2-2 in Chapter 2. Record the selected missions on the unit proficiency work sheet (UPW) (Figure 6-2).

Unit: _____		Date: _____				
No.	Unit Mission/Task	Section Squad	Section Squad	Section Squad	Section Squad	Unit Overall Rating and Remarks
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO-	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO-	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	

**NOTE: If more space is required for remarks use the back side of this form.**

Figure 6-2. Sample Unit Proficiency Work Sheet



6-3. Resource Requirements and Planning Considerations. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating HQ must prepare its own list of consolidated support requirements.

**Table 6-2. Sample Consolidated List of Support Requirements**

<b>Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 5-2-E0001</b>			
<b>Ammunition</b>	<b>DODIC</b>	<b>Estimated Basic Load</b>	
5.56 millimeters (mm)	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per squad automatic weapon (SAW)	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
Antitank Weapon-Effect Simulator System (ATWEES) (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulator, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolitions) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (see note)</b>			
Mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC)		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block trinitrotoluene (TNT)		50 per squad	
Modernized demolition initiator (MDI) M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 each platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>CLASS IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Mines			
<b>MILES Equipment</b>			
	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
Armored personnel carrier (APC)	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small-arms alignment fixture		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the STX.</b>			

6-4. Selecting and Training Os/Cs. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting Os/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the conduct of the evaluation.

a. A six-person O/C team comprised of the following personnel is suggested for performing an external evaluation:

- (1) Senior O/C.
- (2) Staff O/C.
- (3) Operations O/C.
- (4) Administration O/C.
- (5) Logistics O/C.
- (6) NBC O/C.

b. A thorough knowledge of the unit's mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine is required by the Os/Cs. They must understand the overall operation of the unit and how it is integrated into and supports the force protection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in the NBC and local defense common task areas. The Os/Cs should be equal in grade to the person in charge of the element they are evaluating and they should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as team members, and state their findings in writing and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing Os/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of specific duties and responsibilities, and building a spirit of teamwork. The O/C training includes the--

- (1) Overall evaluation design, general scenario, master-events list, and specific evaluation purposes and objectives.
- (2) Unit's METL and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this ARTEP MTP.
- (3) O/C team composition and the general duties and responsibilities of each team member.
- (4) Detailed responsibilities of individual team members with special emphasis on the master-events-list items that are their responsibility. These include--
  - (a) A review of written instructions and materials contained in the Os/Cs folders.
  - (b) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.
  - (c) The O/C communications and C<sup>2</sup> system.
  - (d) Safety procedures.
  - (e) An evaluation data collection OPLAN and procedures.
  - (f) AAR procedures and techniques.



(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation, which includes war-gaming all items of the master-events list in order of their occurrence and a review of each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership and focuses his efforts on ensuring that the Os/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolving problems, synchronizing the efforts of the team members, ensuring close coordination among team members, holding periodic team coordination meetings, planning and orchestrating the unit's AAR, and conducting specific evaluation-team AARs.

6-5 Selecting and Training OPFOR. The OPFOR support for a unit's external evaluation is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the unit's capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or senior NCO who is well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities. He must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. Their training includes--

- (1) Threat tactics and rules of engagement.
- (2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- (3) OPFOR tasks and standards.
- (4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- (5) C<sup>2</sup>.
- (6) Safety.

6.6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by the various individuals and elements that are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

a. Os/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit.

b. The HQ staff two echelons above the unit being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. They issue orders, receive reports, provide feeder information, and control the OPFOR.

c. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information.

a. The senior O/C has the overall responsibility for the implementation of the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is made up by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer unit to accomplish its wartime missions.

b. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit's performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. This evaluation has four steps:

- (1) Identify the ARTEP MTP T&EOs that correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.
- (2) Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit's performances of the tasks. This is done for each evaluation plan task.
- (3) Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.
- (4) Record the unit's overall capability to perform the task by using GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:
  - (a) GO -- the unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standards.
  - (b) NO-GO -- the unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

c. Use other locally produced reports that are approved by the senior O/C and prescribed in the evaluation plan to collect evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit's capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C in determining the unit's overall final rating. The reports listed below can be used to collect the information.

- (1) Unit data sheet (Figure 6-4). This records personnel and equipment status information.
- (2) Environmental data sheet (Figure 6-5). This records information concerning the weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.
- (3) Personnel and equipment loss report (Figure 6-6). This records information concerning unit personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

<b>UNIT DATA SHEET</b>						
1. Unit designation:				Date:		
2. Unit leaders: (Circle the most correct answer.)						
Position	Rank	Time in unit (months)				
Commander	LTC/MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Executive officer	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
BN S3	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
BN S2	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
BN S1	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
BN S4	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
BN maintenance officer	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
A Company commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
B Company commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
C Company commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
3. Unit strength (excluding leaders):						
4. Equipment shortages (major items):						
5. Comments:						
Observer/controller's signature:						

**Figure 6-4. Sample Unit Data Sheet**

<b>ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET</b>						
Exercise number and description:						
Date and time the exercise started:						
Date and time the exercise ended:						
1. Weather conditions: (Circle the appropriate description)						
Clear	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy	Hazy	Rain	Snow	Fog
Other:						
Temperature:						
2. Ground conditions: (Circle the appropriate description)						
Dry	Wet	Ice	Snow			
Other:						
3. Light conditions: (Circle the appropriate description)						
Day	Night					
Moon phase:	1/4	1/2	3/4	Full		
Average range of visibility due to terrain:						
4. Remarks:						

**Figure 6-5. Sample Environmental Data Sheet**



6-8. After Action Reviews. AARs provide direct feedback to unit HQ members by involving them in the diagnosis process and by enabling them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation. In this way, participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through the after-actions phases.

b. Key steps in the AAR process are--

(1) Planning. Planning for AARs is initiated in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical break points and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed subsequently. Qualified Os/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) Preparation. AAR preparation commences with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the HQ engineer unit performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable Os/Cs and unit personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) Conduct. AARs are conducted at logical break points in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR's purpose, the establishment of ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. Guidelines for a successful AAR include the following:

(a) AARs are not critiques but professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner that ensures that participants openly discuss the lessons.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among Os/Cs and unit personnel.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR, if possible. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened but also how it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Participants review the sequence of the events associated with the hazards and the risk assessment made prior to the exercise. As a minimum the review should address hazards that presented themselves that were not identified and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.

(g) Events that were not directly related to the major events are not examined.

(h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(i) The AAR end result is that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

**NOTE:** Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circulars (TCs) 25-6 and 25-20, and FM 25-101.







**APPENDIX A - COMBINED-ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY (CATS)****A-1. General.**

a. The CATS was developed to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. Upon implementation, the CATS will support training integration of heavy, light, and special-operations forces of both AC and RC soldiers. It will enable the Army to more effectively identify, manage, and program the acquisition of training resources vital to achieving and sustaining the combat readiness of the total Army.

b. The CATS concept envisions an overarching strategy that will enable the Army to focus and manage all unit and soldier training in an integrated manner. At the heart of the CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit training strategies that describe the events, frequencies, and resources required to train soldiers and units to standards. These strategies will provide field commanders with a descriptive menu for training. We recognize that while there may be a "best" way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units will have the exact mix of resources required to execute the strategy precisely as written.

**A-2. Elements of the Unit Strategies.**

a. **Maneuver Strategy.** The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depict those resources required to support these events. See DA Pam 350-38 for an example of a maneuver training strategy. The Web site for this information is <http://www.atsc.army.mil/atmd/strac>.

b. **Gunnery Strategy.** The gunnery strategy is built around weapon systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and depict resources required to support weapon training. Schools identified in DA Pam 350-38 as proponents for weapons or weapon systems have developed gunnery strategies. See DA Pam 350-38 for examples of the various weapon strategies.

c. **Soldier Strategy.** The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier. See DA Pam 350-38 for an example of a soldier training strategy.



**APPENDIX B - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)**

For use of the OPORD refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure B-1.

<b>OPERATION ORDER</b>
<p>1. SITUATION.</p> <p>a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. He is being reinforced with motorized rifle forces and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. Latest intelligence summaries (INTSUMs) indicate that the enemy may have a platoon-size combat outpost in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.</p> <p>b. Friendly Forces. 1st Brigade conducts a passage of lines to seize Objective Richmond. On order, 1st Brigade continues the attack forward of phase line (PL) Green. This operation includes--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.</li> <li>(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.</li> <li>(3) Supporting fires: 2nd Battalion, 61st Field Artillery (FA), is in direct support.</li> </ul> <p>2. MISSION. The task force (TF) conducts a passage of lines and attacks to seize and secure Objective Richmond no later than 090600Z. On order, the TF prepares to continue movement forward of PL Green.</p> <p>3. EXECUTION.</p> <p>a. Concept of the Operation: See the overlay developed by the trainer in the field.</p> <p>(1) Maneuver. TF 1-25 departs assembly area (AA) Red Cloud with two company teams abreast and two teams following. Team A leads on Axis Oak and is the main attack. Team B leads on Axis Pine and is supporting the attack. Teams C and D follow on Axis Oak and Pine respectively. The commander's intent is to gain contact with the enemy and locate and fix the enemy's main body so that the brigade can conduct envelopments to destroy the enemy. It is necessary to destroy the enemy's combat outposts. The unit must quickly reorganize and continue movement until the unit finds the main body. The company team that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If that fails, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver with the remaining TF. The unit will continue movement to PL Green if no contact is gained. The unit will continue movement past PL Green on order.</p> <p>(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to Team A initially and then to the team that is in contact (once contact is made).</p> <p>(3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical choke points and identified obstacles are shown on the obstacle overlay.</p> <p>b. Subunit Missions (as required).</p> <p>c. Engineer Support. Priority of support is to the two lead teams. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the team in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.</p>

**Figure B-1. Sample OPORD**

d. Coordinating Instructions.

- (1) Report all enemy contact.
- (2) Report all enemy obstacles.
- (3) Report crossing of the PLs.
- (4) Report additional information, as required.

4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per the brigade's SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command.

b. Signal.

- (1) Current signal operating instructions (SOI).
- (2) Maintain radio-listening silence until initial contact is made with the enemy.

**Figure B-1. Sample OPORD (continued)**

## APPENDIX C - THREAT ANALYSIS

### C-1. Introduction.

a. Dramatic changes in Europe and within the former Soviet Union have reduced the likelihood of an east-west military confrontation in Europe. The threat in Europe has not gone away completely, but it is less immediate and changed in nature. Despite reductions, Russia still has the largest army in Europe. Regardless of the stated peaceful intentions of current Russian political leaders, the Russian Armed Forces still possess formidable capabilities, and those capabilities will remain, should conditions and intentions change. Other former Soviet republics are forming their own armed forces and could pose threats to each other or to other countries in the region. In this time of turmoil and uncertainty, the former Soviet military power remains a potentially dangerous challenge to US and North American Treaty Organization (NATO) security. However, this remnant of the former Soviet threat is just one of many.

b. Many other nations are obtaining or developing sophisticated weaponry. Various regional conflicts could cause the US to intervene bilaterally or as part of a multinational coalition to protect our interests or those of our allies. Other potential conflict areas could call for a variety of responses by either the US or the former Soviet republics or both. The threat may come in an organized military form, which may or may not follow the former Soviet model. It may also come in the form of insurgencies, terrorism, or narcotics trafficking. The US Army needs to be prepared to respond to this broad spectrum of potential threats that it could encounter in various contingencies.

C-2. Global Threats. Modern weapons and the capability to project military power to great distances beyond its own national borders would characterize a global-type threat, such as the former Soviet one. Against such a potential adversary, the threat to rear operations would include the following:

- Armored or mechanized forces breaking into our rear area.
- Airborne, airmobile, or amphibious assault forces inserted into our rear area.
- Long-range artillery, surface-to-surface missiles, or air strikes targeting rear-area assets.
- NBC weapons.
- Radio-electronic combat aimed at jamming or destroying our communications means and disrupting our C<sup>2</sup>.
- Agents and saboteurs.

C-3. Regional Threats. Regional threats, such as Iraq or North Korea, have less capability to project power. However, they may have some of the same weapons and organizations as a global threat. In fact, lessening superpower tensions are contributing significantly to the proliferation of sophisticated weaponry to emerging nations. This applies not only to conventional ground and air weapons, but also to chemical and nuclear weapons and missile systems. A mature regional power, possibly with a global power as a major source of its military hardware, emphasizes the ability to project its forces throughout a given region.

C-4. Local Threats. Local threats have even more localized objectives and little capability to project power beyond their own borders or their immediate neighbors. They generally have less modern equipment than global or regional threat powers or at least a limited variety of modern weapons. Their equipment may include modern small arms and light artillery (mortars, howitzers, gun-howitzers, and rocket launchers), but often does not include sophisticated weapons such as long-range conventional artillery or high-performance aircraft. A local threat may be heavily supported by a regional threat or even by a global power. In the past, for example, Cuba assisted Soviet-backed movements in Angola, Nicaragua, and Ethiopia. This outside influence will often be reflected in the equipment, organization, or tactics of the local threat forces. However, the actions of a local threat are often limited to insurgencies,

civil wars, or border disputes. Insurgents, especially those with outside help, may be able to purchase modern weapons, but may not have developed a logistics base able to sustain continuous conflict. Therefore, they often concentrate on guerrilla tactics, sabotage, assassinations, booby traps, or explosives to achieve their objectives.

C-5. Special Situations.

a. The threat in special situations includes terrorism. Terrorism may satisfy the objectives of different types of threats discussed above. Terrorists are the least likely threat to use conventional forces and thus are the hardest to anticipate or to train against. Terrorist tactics include the following:

- Assassinating or maiming.
- Arson.
- Bombing.
- Hijacking, kidnapping, or hostage-taking.
- Raids and seizure of facilities.
- Sabotage.
- Hoaxes (such as bomb threats).

Aside from these threats, terrorists may also be able to obtain weapons of mass destruction. A political leadership that supports terrorism, as in Iraq, may control such NBC weapons. If nuclear weapons are too difficult to obtain, terrorists may instead employ chemical or biological weapons to reach their goals.

b. Narcotics trafficking is another special condition threat. It may be supported or tolerated by a global power for political or economic reasons. It may also be tied in with regional or local threat powers or with terrorism. There is often a marriage of convenience between insurgent groups and the drug cartels. The cartels can spend significant amounts of money on the latest in technology for communications and security to protect their operations. They can also buy weapons and otherwise finance regional insurgencies and cross-border conflicts.

C-6. Bottom Line. The threat to rear operations includes all of the above categories. These threat categories are not mutually exclusive and may overlap with one another.

## APPENDIX D - METRIC CONVERSION CHART

Table D-1. Metric Conversion Chart

US Units	Multiplied By	Equals Metric Units
<b>Length</b>		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.0447	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
<b>Weight</b>		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
<b>Length</b>		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
<b>Weight</b>		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds





## GLOSSARY

### **Section I** **Abbreviations**

<b>BOMREP</b>	bombing report
<b>?</b>	status unknown
<b>1LT</b>	first lieutenant
<b>1SG</b>	first sergeant
<b>5 Ss and T</b>	search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag
<b>AA</b>	avenue of approach; assembly area
<b>AAR</b>	after-action review
<b>ABCS</b>	Army Battle Command System
<b>AC</b>	active component
<b>ACR</b>	armored cavalry regiment
<b>ADA</b>	air defense artillery
<b>ADAM</b>	area-denial artillery munition
<b>ADC</b>	area damage control
<b>AFM</b>	Air Force manual
<b>AHD</b>	antihandling device
<b>AO</b>	area of operations
<b>AP</b>	antipersonnel
<b>APC</b>	armored personnel carrier
<b>AR</b>	Army regulation; armor
<b>ARTEP</b>	Army Training and Evaluation Program
<b>AT</b>	antiterrorism; antitank
<b>ATTN</b>	attention
<b>ATWESS</b>	antitank weapon-effect signature simulator
<b>AVLB</b>	armored vehicle-launched bridge
<b>BF</b>	board feet; battle fatigue

<b>BLTM</b>	battalion-level training model
<b>BN</b>	battalion
<b>BOS</b>	Battlefield Operating Systems
<b>C2</b>	command and control
<b>CALFEX</b>	combined-arms live-fire exercise
<b>CASEVAC</b>	casualty evaluation
<b>CATS</b>	Combined-Arms Training Strategy
<b>CBT</b>	combat
<b>CCIR</b>	commander's critical-information requirement
<b>CCT</b>	combat-control team
<b>CDM</b>	chemical downwind message
<b>CEV</b>	combat engineer vehicle
<b>CFX</b>	command field exercise
<b>CFZ</b>	critical friendly zone
<b>CHS</b>	combat health support
<b>CO</b>	commissioned officer; carbon monoxide; commanding officer; company
<b>COA</b>	course of action
<b>COMEX</b>	communications exercise
<b>COMSEC</b>	communications security
<b>COP</b>	common operational picture
<b>CP</b>	command post; check point
<b>CPT</b>	captain
<b>CPX</b>	command-post exercise
<b>CS</b>	combat support; Costa Rica
<b>CSE</b>	combat support equipment
<b>CSS</b>	combat service support
<b>DA</b>	Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action
<b>DD</b>	Department of Defense

<b>demo</b>	demolition
<b>DENTAC</b>	dental activity
<b>DIV</b>	Division
<b>DRS</b>	direct religious support; Digital Reconnaissance System
<b>DS</b>	direct support
<b>DS2</b>	decontamination solution #2
<b>DST</b>	decision-support template
<b>DTG</b>	date-time group
<b>DTSS</b>	Digital Topographic Support System
<b>DZ</b>	drop zone
<b>DZST</b>	drop-zone support team
<b>EA</b>	each; engagement area
<b>EBA</b>	engineer battlefield assessment
<b>ECCM</b>	electronic counter-countermeasures
<b>EEFI</b>	essential elements of friendly information
<b>EEl</b>	essential elements of information
<b>EGA</b>	extended graphics adapter; electronically-generated form
<b>EMO</b>	electronic media only
<b>EN</b>	engineer (unit designations; graphics)
<b>ENDEX</b>	end exercise
<b>EOD</b>	explosive ordnance disposal
<b>EPW</b>	enemy prisoner of war
<b>ERF</b>	electronic remote fill; electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM) remote fill
<b>ERP</b>	engineer regulating point; effective radiated power; emitter receiver processor; en route reporting points; end-route rally point; enhanced radiation projectile
<b>EW</b>	electronic warfare
<b>FBCB2</b>	Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below
<b>FH</b>	field hospital; frequency hopping

<b>FIST</b>	fire-support team
<b>FM</b>	field manual; frequency modulated/modulation
<b>FO</b>	forward observer
<b>FPF</b>	final protective fire; final protection fires
<b>FPL</b>	final protective line
<b>FRAGO</b>	fragmentary order
<b>FS</b>	fire support; Fort Sill; foresight
<b>FSO</b>	fire support officer; food service officer
<b>FST</b>	field sanitation team; fire support team
<b>FTX</b>	field training exercise
<b>GRREG</b>	graves registration
<b>GSR</b>	general support-reinforcing; ground surveillance radar
<b>HE</b>	high explosive
<b>HHC</b>	headquarters and headquarters company
<b>HQ</b>	headquarters
<b>HVY</b>	heavy
<b>INTREP</b>	intelligence report
<b>INTSUM</b>	intelligence summary
<b>IPB</b>	intelligence preparation of the battlefield
<b>ITR</b>	independent tank regiment
<b>KIA</b>	killed in action
<b>kph</b>	kilometers per hour
<b>LC</b>	line of crossing; light case
<b>LCE</b>	load-carrying equipment
<b>LD</b>	line of departure
<b>LID</b>	light infantry division
<b>LNE</b>	late net entry
<b>LOGPAC</b>	logistics package; logistical package

<b>LOI</b>	letter of instruction
<b>LRA</b>	local reproduction authorized
<b>LT</b>	Light; lieutenant
<b>LTC</b>	lieutenant colonel
<b>LZ</b>	landing zone
<b>MAJ</b>	major
<b>MAPEX</b>	map exercise
<b>MC</b>	Medical Corps; maneuver control
<b>MCS</b>	Maneuver Control System
<b>MCSR</b>	material-condition status report
<b>MDI</b>	modernized demolition initiator
<b>MEDDAC</b>	medical department activity
<b>METL</b>	mission-essential task list
<b>METT-TC</b>	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations
<b>MHE</b>	materials-handling equipment
<b>MICLIC</b>	mine-clearing line charge
<b>MIJI</b>	meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference
<b>MILES</b>	Multiple Integrated Laser-Engagement System
<b>MLC</b>	military load classification; military load class
<b>MM</b>	millimeter
<b>MOPMS</b>	Modular-Pack Mine System
<b>MOPP</b>	mission-oriented protection posture
<b>MORTREP</b>	mortar bombing report
<b>MOS</b>	military occupational specialty
<b>MOUT</b>	military operations on urbanized terrain
<b>MP</b>	military police
<b>mps</b>	meters per second

<b>MQS</b>	military qualification standards
<b>MRE</b>	meal, ready to eat
<b>MSR</b>	main supply route
<b>MSRT</b>	Mobile Subscriber Radiotelephone Terminal
<b>MTF</b>	medical treatment facility
<b>MTP</b>	mission training plan; MOS training plan
<b>MWR</b>	morale, welfare, and recreation
<b>NATO</b>	North Atlantic Treaty Organization
<b>NBC</b>	nuclear, biological, chemical
<b>NCO</b>	noncommissioned officer
<b>NCOER</b>	noncommissioned officer evaluation report
<b>NCOIC</b>	noncommissioned officer in charge
<b>NCS</b>	net control station
<b>NG</b>	National Guard
<b>non-ICOM</b>	nonintegrated communications security
<b>NRI</b>	net radio interface
<b>NSN</b>	national stock number; nonstandard number
<b>NVD</b>	night vision device
<b>O/C</b>	observer/controller
<b>OBM</b>	outboard motor
<b>OBSDOC</b>	obstacle document
<b>OEG</b>	operation exposure guide; operational-exposure guidance
<b>OIC</b>	officer in charge
<b>OP</b>	observation post
<b>OPFOR</b>	opposing forces
<b>OPLAN</b>	operation plan
<b>OPORD</b>	operation order
<b>OPSEC</b>	operations security

<b>OPTEMPO</b>	operational tempo
<b>OR</b>	operational readiness
<b>P</b>	pass; passed; barometric pressure; mean radius of curvature
<b>PAC</b>	Personnel and Administration Center
<b>PAM</b>	pamphlet
<b>PCC</b>	precombat check
<b>PCI</b>	photo-coverage indexes; precombat inspection
<b>PDDE</b>	power-driven decontamination equipment
<b>PDF</b>	principal direction of fire
<b>PDS</b>	personnel daily summary
<b>PIR</b>	priority intelligence requirements
<b>PL</b>	phase line; Poland
<b>PLT</b>	platoon
<b>PM</b>	provost marshal; program manager; preventive maintenance
<b>PMCS</b>	preventive-maintenance checks and services
<b>POL</b>	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
<b>POM</b>	preparation for oversea movement; Program Objective Memorandum
<b>POS/NAV</b>	position/navigation
<b>POV</b>	privately owned vehicle
<b>PS</b>	personnel strength; personnel status
<b>PSC</b>	personnel service company
<b>PSG</b>	platoon sergeant
<b>PSR</b>	personnel status report
<b>PVNTMED</b>	preventive medicine
<b>R&amp;S</b>	Reconnaissance and Security; reconnaissance and surveillance
<b>RAAM</b>	remote antiarmor mine
<b>RAAMS</b>	route antiarmor mine system; Remote Antiarmor Mine System
<b>RATELO</b>	radiotelephone operator

<b>RC</b>	reserve component
<b>RES</b>	radiation exposure status
<b>RP</b>	Republic of Philippines; release point; rally point; reference point
<b>RT</b>	radius of target; receiver/transmitter
<b>RTD</b>	return to duty
<b>RXMT</b>	retransmit
<b>S1</b>	Adjutant (US Army)
<b>S2</b>	Intelligence Officer (US Army)
<b>S3</b>	Operations and Training Officer (US Army)
<b>S4</b>	Supply Officer (US Army)
<b>SA</b>	semiannually; situational awareness
<b>SALUTE</b>	size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment
<b>SATRAN</b>	satellite transmission
<b>SATS</b>	Standard Army Training System
<b>SAW</b>	squad automatic weapon
<b>SB</b>	Supply Bulletin; switchboard
<b>SCATMINE</b>	scatterable mine
<b>SCPE</b>	simplified collective-protection equipment
<b>SHELREP</b>	shelling report
<b>SHTU</b>	simplified handheld terminal unit
<b>SIG</b>	signal
<b>SINCGARS</b>	single-channel ground and airborne radio system
<b>SITREP</b>	situation report
<b>SJA</b>	Staff Judge Advocate
<b>SOEO</b>	scheme of engineer operations
<b>SOI</b>	signal operation instructions; specific operation instructions
<b>SOP</b>	standing operating procedure
<b>SP</b>	start point; strongpoint; self-propelled; Spain



<b>SPOTREP</b>	spot report
<b>SSI</b>	standing signal instructions; supplemental signal instructions
<b>SSN</b>	social security number
<b>STANAG</b>	Standardization Agreement
<b>STB</b>	super tropical bleach
<b>STP</b>	soldier's training publication
<b>STRAC</b>	Standards in Training Commission
<b>STX</b>	situational-training exercise
<b>T</b>	trained; slab thickness; deck thickness; crown thickness; geodetic azimuth; grid azimuth; slope distance; telescope above station
<b>T&amp;EO</b>	training and evaluation outline
<b>TACSOP</b>	tactical standing operating procedure
<b>TC</b>	technical coordinator; training circular; track commander; tank commander
<b>TEK</b>	traffic encryption key
<b>TEWT</b>	tactical exercise without troops
<b>TF</b>	task force
<b>TM</b>	technical manual
<b>TNT</b>	trinitrotoluene
<b>TOC</b>	Tactical Operations Center
<b>TOE</b>	table(s) of organization and equipment
<b>TRADOC</b>	United States Army Training and Doctrine Command
<b>TRP</b>	target reference point
<b>TRTS</b>	tactical records traffic system
<b>TSEC</b>	transmission security
<b>TSK</b>	transmission security key
<b>TSOP</b>	tactical standing operating procedure
<b>U</b>	unclassified; up; untrained
<b>UAV</b>	unmanned aerial vehicle

<b>UCMJ</b>	Uniform Code of Military Justice
<b>UPW</b>	unit proficiency worksheet
<b>US</b>	United States
<b>USA</b>	United States of America; United States Army
<b>USAREUR</b>	United States Army, Europe
<b>USMTF</b>	United States message text format
<b>UXO</b>	unexploded ordnance
<b>WCS</b>	weapon control status; weapon control station
<b>WESTCOM</b>	United States Army, Western Command
<b>WIA</b>	wounded in action
<b>WO</b>	warrant officer; warning order
<b>XO</b>	executive officer

## **Section II**

### **Terms**

#### **ARTEP (Army Training and Evaluation Program)**

The program for collective training in units. It describes the collective tasks that the unit must perform to accomplish its critical wartime mission and survive on the battlefield. The ARTEP combines the training and evaluation process into one integrated function. The ARTEP is a training program and a test. The primary purpose of external evaluation under this program is to diagnose unit requirements for future training.

#### **Bangalore torpedo**

A metal tube containing explosives and a firing mechanism. It is used to breach barbed wire obstacles and detonate land mines.

#### **Berm**

A uniform soil embankment.

#### **Class I**

Subsistence items (meals, ready-to-eat [MRE], T-rations, and fresh fruits and vegetables) and gratuitous-issue health and comfort items.

#### **Class II**

Clothing, individual equipment, tentage, organizational tool sets and kits, hand tools, maps, and administrative and housekeeping supplies and equipment.

#### **Class IV**

Construction materials, including installed equipment and all fortification and obstacle materials.

#### **Class IX**

Repair parts and components, to include kits, assemblies, and subassemblies (repairable or nonrepairable) required for maintenance support of all equipment.

#### **Class V**

Ammunition of all types, including chemical, bombs, explosives, mines, fuzes, detonators, pyrotechnics, missiles, rockets, propellants, and other associate items.

#### **Class VII**

Major end items such as launchers, tanks, mobile machine shops, and vehicles.

#### **Claymore**

M18A1 antipersonnel mine

#### **Cue**

(1) A word, situation, or other signal for action. An initiating cue is a signal to begin performing a task or task performance step. An internal cue is a signal to go from one element of a task to another. A terminating cue indicates task completion. (2) Used to contact an FH radio net when you are not an active member of that net. Cue can be used if you are operating in SC and wish to contact an FH net.

#### **Field Manual (FM)**

A DA publication that contains doctrine that prescribes how the Army and its organizations function on the battlefield in terms of missions, organizations, personnel, and equipment. The level of detail should facilitate an understanding of "what" and "how" for commanders and staffs to execute the missions and tasks. The FM may also be used to publish selected alliance doctrinal publications that are not readily integrated into other doctrinal literature.

#### **Final protective fire (FPF)**

An immediately available prearranged barrier of fire designed to impede enemy movement across defensive lines or areas.

#### **FRAGO (fragmentary order)**

An abbreviated form of an operation order (usually issued on a day-to-day basis) that eliminates the need for restating information contained in a basic operation order.

#### **MICLIC (mine-clearing line charge) M58 Series**

A rocket propelled line charge, 106.5 meters (117 yards) long that can breach a lane 8 meters (8.8 yards) wide by 100 meters (110 yards) long. The MICLIC is mounted on a standard military (M353 or M200) trailer and has a 62-meter standoff capability. Engineer units will employ the MICLIC in response to minefield breaching requirements identified by the maneuver unit.

#### **Military occupational specialty (MOS)**

A term used to identify a group of duty positions so closely related that they are interchangeable among soldiers so classified at any skill level.

#### **Military qualification standards**

The system for establishing the standards and responsibilities for the professional development, training, and education of Army officers at appropriate levels/grades in order to execute our warfighting doctrine.

#### **MOPMS (modular pack mine system)**

Scatterable mine system with antitank or antipersonnel mines. A mix minefield is obtained by overlapping patterns of each type.

#### **NBC 1 Report**

Observer's Initial Report. Used by the observing unit to give basic, initial, and follow-up data about an NBC attack. This report is sent by platoons and companies to the battalion headquarters or by designated observers to the division NBC Center (NBCC).

**NBC 4 Report**

Monitoring and Survey Report used to report NBC hazards detected by a unit through monitoring, survey, or reconnaissance. This report is prepared and submitted by company-level organizations.

**NBC 5 Report**

Actual Contaminated Areas Report. Once the NBC reports are posted on the situation map, an NBC 5 report showing the contaminated area is prepared by the division. The preferred method of dissemination is by overlay.

**Operating tempo (OPTEMPO)**

The annual operating miles/hours for systems in a particular unit required to execute the commander's training strategy. It is stated in terms of the miles/hours for the major system in a unit; however, all equipment generating significant operating and support cost has an established operating tempo.

**OPORD (operation order)**

A directive issued by a commander to subordinate commanders for the purpose of effecting the coordinated execution of a plan of action.

**Parapet**

A wall, rampart, or elevation of earth or stone to protect soldiers.

**Release point**

A well-defined point on a route at which the elements composing a column return under the authority of their respective commanders. Each element continues its movement toward its own appropriate destination.

**scatterable mines**

Mines that are delivered to their effective area by a means other than hand emplacement, such as by artillery or aircraft.

**Situation report (SITREP)**

A report giving the situation in the area of the reporting unit or formation.

**SOP (standing operating procedure)**

A set of instructions covering those features of operations that lend themselves to a definite or standardized procedure without loss of effectiveness. The procedure is applicable unless ordered otherwise.

**Threat Level I**

1. Enemy agent activity. Missions include espionage, interdiction, and subversion. 2. Sabotage by enemy sympathizers. Missions include arson, assassination, sabotage, theft of supplies and material, and political unrest. 3. Terrorism. Actions that instill fear by violence or threats of violence to obtain political, religious, or ideological goals.

**Threat Level II**

1. Diversionary and sabotage operations conducted by combat units. 2. Raid, ambush, and reconnaissance operations conducted by combat units. 3. Special or unconventional warfare missions.

**Threat Level III**

1. Heliborne operations. 2. Airborne operations. 3. Amphibious operations. 4. Ground force deliberate operations. 5. Infiltration operations.

## REFERENCES

### Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

#### Army Regulations

AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997
AR 200-1	Environmental Protection and Enhancement. 21 February 1997
AR 220-10	Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM). 15 June 1973
AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. 3 February 1995
AR 30-1	The Army Food Service Program. 1 January 1985
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 29 September 2000
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988
AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995
AR 600-15	Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986
AR 600-38	Meal Card Management System. 11 March 1988
AR 600-8	Military Personnel Management. 1 October 1989
AR 600-8-14	Identification Cards for Members of the Uniformed Services, Their Family Members, and Other Eligible Personnel. 1 March 1998
AR 600-8-2	Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions (FLAGS). 30 October 1987
AR 600-8-8	The Total Army Sponsorship Program. 1 July 1993
AR 608-99	Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994
AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level. 31 October 1997

#### Army Training and Evaluation Program

ARTEP 5-025-66-MTP	Engineer Battalion, Airborne Division. 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Airborne Division. 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Airborne Division. 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Airborne Division. 18 October 2000
ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP	Assault and Obstacle Platoon, Engineer Company, Light Armored Cavalry Regiment. 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-053-12-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Light Armored Cavalry Regiment. 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP	Mobility Platoon, Engineer Company, Brigade Combat Team. 10 January 2001
ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP	Mobility Support Platoon, Engineer Company, Brigade Combat Team. 10 January 2001
ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Brigade Combat Team. 10 January 2001
ARTEP 5-113-11-MTP	Assault and Obstacle Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Armored Cavalry Regiment. 20 June 2001

ARTEP 5-113-12-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Armored Cavalry Regiment 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-113-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Armored Cavalry Regiment 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-155-66-MTP	Engineer Battalion, Infantry Division (Light). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Infantry Division (Light). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Infantry Division (Light). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Infantry Division (Light). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-215-66-MTP	Engineer Battalion, Air Assault Division 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Air Assault Division 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Air Assault Division. 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Air Assault Division. 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-335-60-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Heavy Division/Corps. 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-335-65-MTP	Engineer Company; Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Heavy Division/Corps (Mech); Engineer Company, Heavy Separate Brigade/ACR 1 December 1999
ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP	Engineer Combat Battalion, Engineer Brigade, Heavy Division. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-335-70-MTP	Engineer Platoon; Heavy Division/Corps/Armored Cavalry Regiment. 1 December 1999
ARTEP 5-336-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-337-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Heavy Division. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Heavy Division. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-413-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Construction Support. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-415-66-MTP	Engineer Battalion (Combat Heavy) Battalion Staff. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-416-34-MTP	Headquarters and Support Company, Engineer Battalion (CBT HVY). 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-417-13-MTP	Engineer Equipment Platoon. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-417-14-MTP	Engineer Maintenance Platoons. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-417-17-MTP	Mission Training Plan for Engineer Construction Platoon. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-417-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion (Combat Heavy). 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-423-11-MTP	Engineer Dump Truck Platoon. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-423-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Combat Support Equipment. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-424-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Dump Truck. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP	Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Wheeled). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Wheeled). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Wheeled). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Wheeled) 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-434-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Pipeline Construction. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-435-66-MTP	Engineer Combat Battalion, Corps (X) (APC Version). 25 June 1999

ARTEP 5-435-67-MTP	Engineer Combat Battalion, Corps (M) (APC/CEV/AVLB Version). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-436-35-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Corps (X). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-436-37-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Corps (M). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Corps (X). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-437-11-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion Corps (M). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-437-36-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Corps (X). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-437-38-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Corps (M). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-443-35-MTP	Engineer Light Equipment Company. To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-445-66-MTP	Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Light). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Airborne (Corps). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Light). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Airborne (Corps). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Light) 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Airborne (Corps). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Light) 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-500-21-MTP	Engineer Teams. 21 September 1998
ARTEP 5-500-22-MTP	Firefighter. 19 September 1997
ARTEP 5-500-24-MTP	Engineer Diving Teams. 3 October 1995
ARTEP 5-510-10-MTP	Engineer Fire-Fighting Team, HQ. To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-510-12-MTP	Engineer Fire-Fighting Team, Fire Truck. To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-510-16-MTP	Engineer Fire-Fighting Team, Brush Fire Truck. To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-510-18-MTP	Engineer Fire-Fighting Team, Crash Rescue. To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-520-10-MTP	Engineer Team, Quarry (75TPH) (LC). To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-540-10-MTP	Topographic Planning/Control Team. 20 April 1999
ARTEP 5-540-11-MTP	Terrain Analysis Team. To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-540-12-MTP	Command and Control Team (DS) (HVY). To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-540-13-MTP	Terrain Analysis Team (LID). To be published within six months.

#### **Department of Army Forms**

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1248	Road Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1249	Bridge Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1250	Tunnel Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1251	Ford Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955

DA FORM 1252	Ferry Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1355	Minefield Record. 1 March 1987
DA FORM 1711-R	Engineer Reconnaissance Report. 1 May 1985
DA FORM 2166-7	Noncommissioned Officer Evaluation Report (NCO-ER). September 1987.
DA FORM 2166-7-1	NCO Counseling Checklist/Record. August 1987.
DA FORM 67-8	US Army Officer Evaluation Report. 1 September 1979.

### Department of Army Pamphlets

DA PAM 350-38	Standards in Weapon Training. 3 July 1997
DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures)(Standalone Pub). 31 December 1997

### Department of Defense Publications

DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. 1 May 1996
--------------	---

### Field Manuals

FM 100-5	Operations. 14 June 1993
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics (MCRP 5-2A). 30 September 1997
FM 10-23	Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996
FM 10-27-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster General Support Supply Operations. 20 April 1993
FM 10-27-2	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations. 18 June 1991
FM 10-500-1	Airdrop Support Operations in a Theater of Operations. 19 June 1991
FM 10-64	Mortuary Affairs Operations 16 February 1999
FM 10-67-1	Concepts and Equipment of Petroleum Operations 2 April 1998
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 17-95	Cavalry Operations. 24 December 1996
FM 19-30	Physical Security. 8 January 2001
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations. 29 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000
FM 21-10-1	Unit Field Sanitation Team. 11 October 1989
FM 21-16	Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994
FM 21-20	Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992
FM 21-60	Visual Signals. 30 September 1987
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984
FM 22-51	Leaders` Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994
FM 22-9	Soldier Performance in Continuous Operations. 12 December 1991
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the Air-Land Battle. 15 October 1990
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990
FM 24-35	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI". 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990



FM 25-100	Training the Force. 15 November 1988
FM 25-101	Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990
FM 3-100	Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996
FM 3-11	Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 19 August 1996
FM 3-19	NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993
FM 3-19.40	Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations. To be published within six months.
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992
FM 3-34.2	Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000
FM 3-4	NBC Protection. 29 May 1992
FM 34-130	Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield. 8 July 1994
FM 34-2	Collection Management and Synchronization Planning. 8 March 1994
FM 34-3	Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990
FM 34-45	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Electronic Attack. 9 June 2000
FM 34-5	(S) Human Intelligence and Related Counterintelligence Operations. 29 July 1994.
FM 34-60	Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000
FM 3-50	Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990
FM 44-100	US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000
FM 44-64	SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997
FM 44-8	Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996
FM 5-10	Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996
FM 5-101	Mobility. 23 January 1985
FM 5-102	Counter-mobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998
FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
FM 5-30	Engineer Intelligence. 22 September 1967
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-36	Route Reconnaissance and Classification. 10 May 1985
FM 5-410	Military Soils Engineering. 23 December 1992
FM 5-430-00-1	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994
FM 5-430-00-2	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design. 29 September 1994
FM 5-480	Port Construction and Repair. 12 December 1990
FM 55-20	Rail Transport in a Theater of Operations. 1 June 2000
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996
FM 5-71-3	Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored). 3 October 1995
FM 57-38	Pathfinder Operations. 9 April 1993
FM 63-1	Support Battalions and Squadrons, Separate Brigades and Armored Cavalry Regiment. 30 September 1993
FM 63-2	Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions. 20 May 1991
FM 63-20	Forward Support Battalion. 26 February 1990.

FM 63-21	Main Support Battalion. 7 August 1990.
FM 63-3	Corps Support Command. 30 September 1993.
FM 63-4	Combat Service Support Operations - Theater Army Area Command. 24 September 1984.
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990
FM 71-1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 26 January 1998
FM 71-100	Division Operations. 28 August 1996
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985
FM 7-7J	Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 7 May 1993
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 14 April 2000
FM 90-13	River-Crossing Operations. 26 January 1998
FM 90-7	Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994

### **Other Product Types**

STANAG 2003	Patrol Reports. 16 January 1989
STANAG 2036 (ENGR)	Land Minefield Laying, Marking, Recording, and Reporting Procedures. 12 February 1987.
TRADOC PAM 525-50	US Army Operational Concept for Health Service Support, AirLand Battles. 11 April 1986
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice.

### **Soldier Training Publications**

STP 10-92Y1-SM	Soldier's Manual, MOS 92Y, Unit Supply Specialist, Skill Level 1. 23 February 1994
STP 10-92Y24-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide for Unit Supply Specialist, MOS 92Y Skill Levels 2, 3, and 4. 23 February 1994
STP 19-95B1-SM	Soldier's Manual, MOS 95B, Military Police, Skill Level 1. 21 February 1997
STP 21-1-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1994
STP 21-24-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 1992
STP 21-II-MQS	Military Qualification Standards II Manual of Common Tasks for (Lieutenants and Captains). 31 January 1991
STP 21-I-MQS	Military Qualification Standards I Manual of Common Tasks (Precommissioning Requirements). 31 May 1990
STP 3-54B2-SM	Soldier's Manual, Chemical Operations Specialist, MOS 54B Skill Level 2. 3 October 1995
STP 5-12B1-SM	Soldier's Manual: MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Level 1. 15 May 2001
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual Skill Levels 2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 12B, Combat Engineer. 12 December 1990

### **Technical Manuals**

TM 11-3895-203-15	Operator's Organizational, Direct Support, General Support and Depot Maintenance Manual for Reel Equipment, CE-11 (NSN 5805-00-407-7722). 11 April 1967
TM 11-5805-262-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-

	715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653). 15 June 1990
TM 11-5805-294-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983
TM 55-208	Railway Equipment: Characteristics and Data. 5 October 1976
TM 750-244-2	Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use (Electronics Command). 14 March 1972
TM 750-244-3	Procedures for Destruction of Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (Mobility Equipment Command). 23 September 1969
TM 750-244-6	Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (US Army Tank-Automotive Command). 3 October 1972
TM 750-244-7	Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply Classifications 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090 and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use. 18 June 1970
<b>Training Circulars</b>	
TC 12-16	PAC Noncommissioned Officer's Guide. 27 June 1991
TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988
TC 25-20	A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews. 30 September 1993
TC 25-6	Force-on-Force Collective Training Using the Tactical Engagement Simulation Training System. 3 October 1995
TC 25-8	Training Ranges. 25 February 1992



### Questionnaire

MTP NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_ DATE \_\_\_\_\_

MTP TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please respond to all questions by circling your answer or providing a written response, where requested. Please make a copy of this questionnaire. Mail to: Commandant, Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8600.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU.

1. What is your position (for example, company commander, platoon sergeant [PSG])?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. How long have you served in this position? \_\_\_\_\_

3. How long have you served in this unit? \_\_\_\_\_

4. What is your component?

- a. Active Component
- b. Reserve Component

5. Where is your unit?

- a. Continental United States (CONUS)
- b. United States Army, Europe (USAREUR)
- c. United States Army, Western Command (WESTCOM)
- d. Eighth United States Army (USA)
- e. Other (specify)

\_\_\_\_\_

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL.

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

- a. Has made training worse.
- b. Has made training better.
- c. Has had no affect on training.
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

7. How easy is the document to use, compared to other training products?

- a. More difficult.
- b. Easier.
- c. About the same.
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

For question numbers 8 through 11, choose one of the following answers:

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training.
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes.
- c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines.
- d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises.
- e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.
- f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation.
- g. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

8. What part of the MTP document was least useful? \_\_\_\_\_

9. What part of the MTP document was most useful? \_\_\_\_\_

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?  
\_\_\_\_\_

11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand? \_\_\_\_\_

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES AND SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISES (STXs).

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

- a. They do not prepare the unit at all.
- b. They help, but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements.
- c. They help, but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements.
- d. They help, but only provide between 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements.
- e. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STX be added or deleted from the MTP? \_\_\_\_\_

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

- a. Have too many pages.
- b. Are hard to read and understand.
- c. Need more illustrations.
- d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises.
- e. Need more information on leader training.
- f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises.
- g. Need more information on support and resources.
- h. Need more information on normally attached elements.
- i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills.
- j. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

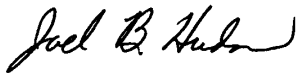


**ARTEP 5-053-35-MTP**  
**20 JUNE 2001**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

ERIC K. SHINSEKI  
General, United States Army  
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON  
Administrative Assistant to the  
Secretary of the Army  
0123306

DISTRIBUTION:

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve:* Not to be distributed. EMO only.



**PIN: 079231-000**